



Your Palm<sup>®</sup> Treo<sup>™</sup>  
750v Smartphone

## Intellectual property notices

© 2006 Palm Inc. All rights reserved. Palm, Treo, and the Palm and Treo logos are among the trademarks or registered trademarks owned by or licensed to Palm Inc. All other brand and product names are or may be trademarks of, and are used to identify products or services of, their respective owners.

The Treo trademark is used by Palm Inc. in Sweden and Denmark with the express consent of Pfizer and its affiliated companies. The products marketed and/or sold by Palm Inc. under the Treo trademark are in no way affiliated with Pfizer or its business.

This product is protected by one or more of the following United States patents:

7,007,239; 6,976,226; 6,975,304; 6,965,375; 6,961,567; 6,961,029; 6,957,397; 6,952,571; 6,950,988; 6,947,975; 6,947,017; 6,943,667; 6,940,490; 6,924,752; 6,907,233; 6,906,701; 6,906,741; 6,901,276; 6,850,780; 6,845,408; 6,842,628; 6,842,335; 6,831,662; 6,819,552; 6,804,699; 6,795,710; 6,788,285; 6,781,824; 6,781,575; 6,766,490; 6,745,047; 6,744,451; 6,738,852; 6,732,105; 6,724,720; 6,721,892; 6,712,638; 6,708,280; 6,697,639; 6,687,839; 6,685,328; 6,665,803; 6,618,044; 6,590,588; 6,539,476; 6,532,148; 6,523,124; 6,519,141; 6,516,202; 6,490,155; 6,480,146; 6,457,134; 6,456,247; 6,442,637; 6,441,824; 6,437,543; 6,429,625; 6,425,087; 6,389,572; 6,388,877; 6,381,650; 6,363,082; 6,344,848; 6,317,085; 6,241,537; 6,222,857; 6,185,423; 6,147,314; 6,115,248; 6,064,342; D421,251; D429,252; D466,128; D478,091. Patent pending.

This product also is licensed under United States patent 6,058,304.

MPEG Layer-3 audio decoding technology is licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson. Palm, Inc. is an authorized licensee of the MultiMediaCard trademark. This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary. All rights reserved.

## Disclaimer and limitation of liability

Palm Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any damage or loss resulting from the use of this guide. Palm Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any loss or claims by third parties that

may arise through the use of this software. Palm Inc. and its suppliers assume no responsibility for any damage or loss caused by deletion of data as a result of malfunction, dead battery, or repairs. Be sure to make backup copies of all important data on other media to protect against data loss.

## End user notice

**NOTE** The Voice Command application is not available in all languages. See [Setting up voice commands](#) .

Microsoft® Voice Command Version 1.5 for Windows Mobile®

**IMPORTANT** Do not become distracted from driving safely if operating a motor vehicle while using Device Software.

Operating certain parts of this Device requires user attention. Diverting attention away from the road while driving can possibly cause an accident or other serious consequences. Even occasional, short diversions of attention can be dangerous if your attention is diverted away from your driving task at a critical time. Do not change system settings or enter data non-verbally (using your hands) while driving. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations. This is important since while setting up or changing some functions you might be required to distract your attention away from the road and remove your hands from the wheel.

Microsoft makes no representations, warranties, or other determinations that ANY use of the Software Product is legal, safe, or in any manner recommended or intended while driving or otherwise operating a motor vehicle.

## General Operation

**NOTE** The Voice Command application is not available in all languages. See [Setting up voice commands](#) .

**Voice Command Control:** Many of the functions of the Device Software can be accomplished using only voice commands. Using voice commands while driving allows you to initiate the command with a button and then operate the Device mostly without removing your hands from the wheel.

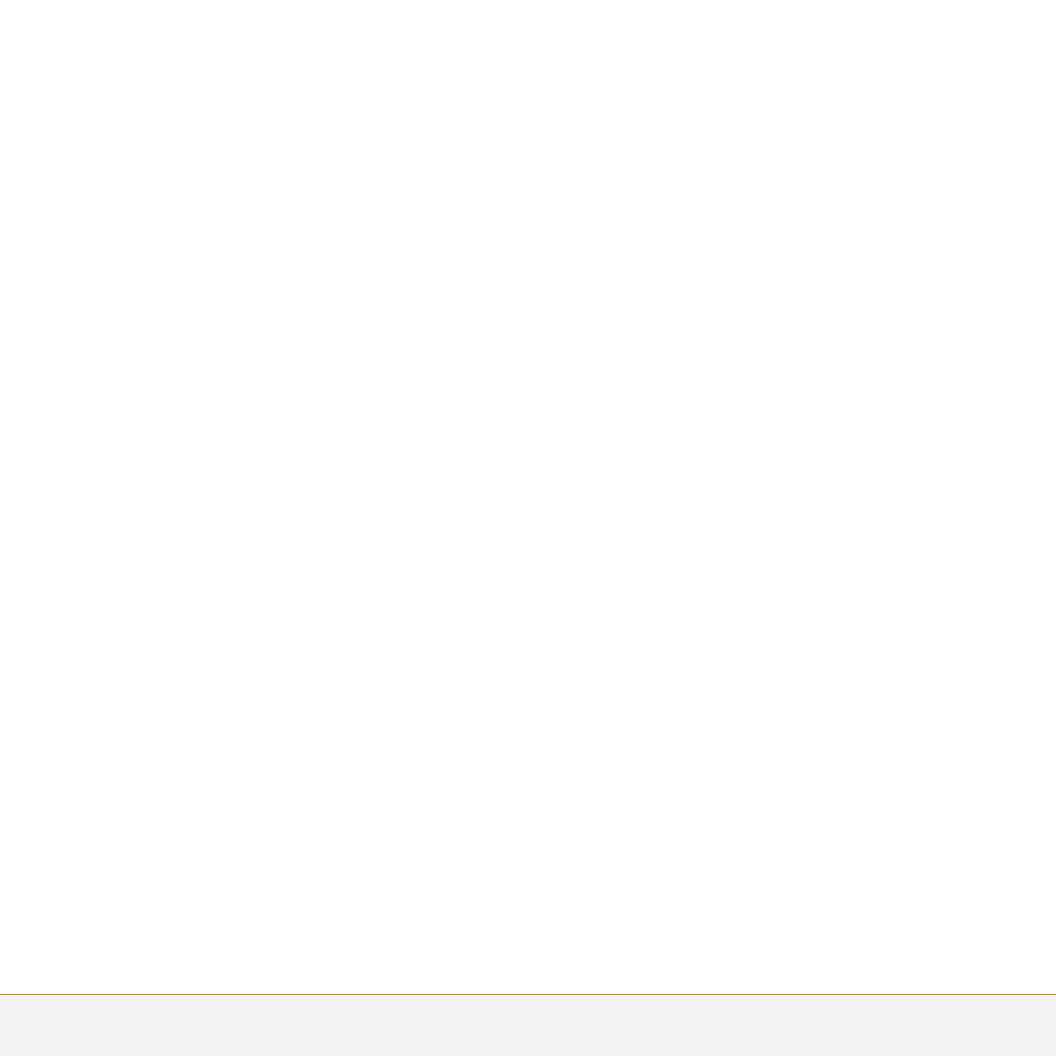
**Prolonged Views of Screen:** If you are driving, do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention. Even occasional short scans to the screen may be hazardous if your attention has been diverted away from your driving task at a critical time.

**Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.

**Let Your Judgment Prevail:** The Device Software is only an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. The Device Software is not a substitute for your personal judgment.

**Use of Speech Recognition Functions:** Speech recognition software is inherently a statistical process which is subject to errors. It is your responsibility to monitor the speech recognition functions and address any errors.

PN: 406-10620-00  
v 1.5



# Contents

---

Welcome .....	1
What's in the box? .....	1
What do I need to get started? .....	2
Chapter 1: Setting up .....	3
Palm Treo 750v smartphone overview .....	5
Inserting the SIM card and battery .....	8
Charging the battery .....	9
Making your first call .....	12
Setting up synchronization .....	14
Chapter 2: Moving around on your smartphone .....	15
Navigating around the screen .....	17
Using the keyboard .....	24
Opening and closing applications .....	28
Using your Today screen .....	29
Chapter 3: Your phone .....	31
Turning your smartphone on/off .....	33
Making calls from the Today screen .....	34
Other ways of making calls .....	38
Receiving calls .....	39
Using voicemail .....	40
What can I do during a call? .....	41
How many minutes have I used? .....	47
Defining speed-dial buttons .....	48
Using a phone headset .....	50

Customizing phone settings . . . . .	54
What are all those icons? . . . . .	62
<b>Chapter 4: Synchronizing information . . . . .</b>	<b>65</b>
How do I synchronize? . . . . .	68
What can I synchronize? . . . . .	69
Setting up wireless synchronization . . . . .	70
Setting up your computer for synchronization . . . . .	74
Synchronizing using the sync cable . . . . .	78
Other ways to synchronize . . . . .	79
Setting synchronization options . . . . .	81
<b>Chapter 5: Your email . . . . .</b>	<b>83</b>
Setting up . . . . .	85
Sending and receiving messages . . . . .	89
Working with email messages . . . . .	93
Sending email messages from within another application . . . . .	97
<b>Chapter 6: Your text and multimedia messages . . . . .</b>	<b>99</b>
Using the Messaging application . . . . .	101
Customizing the Messaging application . . . . .	110
<b>Chapter 7: Your connections to the web and wireless devices . . . . .</b>	<b>113</b>
Browsing the web . . . . .	115
Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology . . . . .	121
Using your device as a wireless modem . . . . .	125
<b>Chapter 8: Your photos, videos, and music . . . . .</b>	<b>129</b>
Camera . . . . .	131
Pictures & Videos . . . . .	136
Windows Media Player Mobile . . . . .	140

<b>Chapter 9: Your personal information organizer</b>	<b>147</b>
Contacts	149
Calendar	151
Tasks	157
Notes	159
<b>Chapter 10: Your Microsoft Office tools</b>	<b>163</b>
Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files	165
Word Mobile	165
PowerPoint Mobile	171
Excel Mobile	172
<b>Chapter 11: Your application and info management tools</b>	<b>183</b>
Finding information	185
Installing applications	187
Removing applications	190
Sharing information	191
Beaming information	191
Using expansion cards	193
Calculator	197
<b>Chapter 12: Your personal settings</b>	<b>199</b>
Today screen settings	201
System sound settings	202
Display and appearance settings	204
Application settings	206
Locking your smartphone and info	210
System settings	214
Connection settings	220

Chapter 13: Common questions	223
Transferring info from another device	223
Reinstalling the desktop software	224
Resetting your smartphone	224
Performance	228
Screen	229
Network connection	229
Synchronization	233
Email	239
Web	241
Camera	242
Third-party applications	243
Making room on your smartphone	244
Voice quality	245
Where to learn more	247
Terms	249
Regulatory information	255
Specifications	263
Index	267



# Welcome

---

Congratulations on the purchase of your Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphone. In one compact and indispensable device, you now have all of the following:

- An advanced wireless smartphone
- A Windows Mobile® organizer with portable expansion capability (miniSD)
- High-speed data with GPRS/EDGE and UMTS support
- A 1.3-megapixel digital camera Support for numerous mobile email solutions
- Text and multimedia messaging
- Windows Media® Player Mobile
- Microsoft® Office Mobile suite

This guide will help you set up your Treo 750v smartphone and quickly learn to use it.

**NOTE** If you want to use your phone and send and receive text messages, you need a service contract with your network operator. If you also want to browse the web and send and receive email, you need not only a service contract but also

high-speed data service from your network operator. You may also need high-speed data service to send and receive multimedia messages. Data speeds vary based on network availability and capacity.

**TIP** LOOK HERE: Don't miss the helpful tips and cross-references given in this column.

## What's in the box?

---

You should have received all of the following items in the Treo 750v smartphone box:

### Hardware

- Treo 750v smartphone
- Rechargeable battery (1200 mAh)
- AC charger with international adapters
- USB sync cable
- Stereo headset
- Screen protector

## Documentation and software

- *Quick Start Guide*
- *Treo 750v Smartphone Quick Reference Guide*
- *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*, which includes the following:
  - Microsoft Office Outlook® software for your computer
  - ActiveSync® desktop synchronization software
  - Additional software for your smartphone
  - User Guide (this guide)
- Palm warranty
- End User License Agreement

## What do I need to get started?

---

As you work through the instructions in this guide, you need all the items that came in the Treo 750v smartphone box (see [What's in the box?](#)) as well as the following:

- An activated wireless account (using a SIM card) with data services
- A location with wireless coverage for your smartphone
- If you plan to synchronize personal information between your smartphone and a computer, you need access to that computer during setup.



# Setting up

---

Congratulations on the purchase of your new Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphone. You're about to discover the many things about your smartphone that will help you better manage your life and have fun, too.

As you become more familiar with your smartphone, you'll want to personalize the settings and add applications to make it uniquely yours. But first, take these few easy steps to set up your smartphone and get it running.

## Benefits

- Know where your smartphone controls are located
- Start using your smartphone right away

## In this chapter

---

Palm Treo 750v smartphone overview . . . . .	5
Inserting the SIM card and battery . . . . .	8
Making your first call . . . . .	12
Setting up synchronization . . . . .	14

# Palm Treo 750v smartphone overview

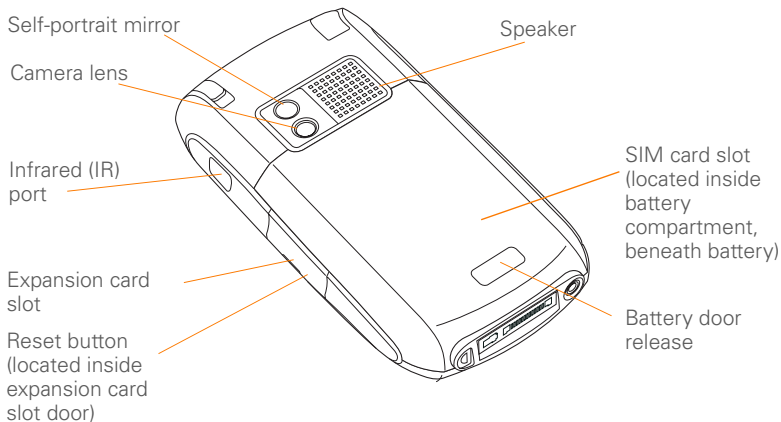
## Front view



**TIP** Be careful not to scratch or crush your smartphone screen. Do not store it in a place where other items might damage it.

**DID YOU KNOW?** By default, pressing the Side button opens the Windows Media® Player Mobile application (see [Windows Media Player Mobile](#)). You can change the function of the Side button (see [Reassigning buttons](#)).

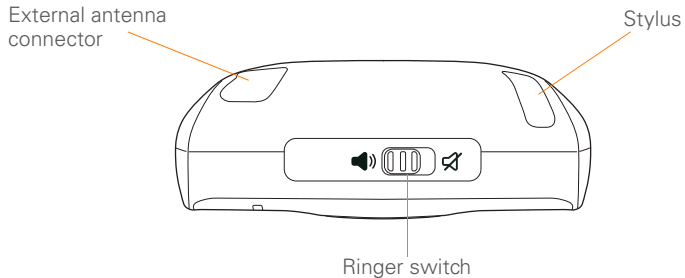
### Back view



**IMPORTANT** The Treo 750v smartphone speaker includes a large magnet, so be sure not to store your smartphone near

credit cards or other items that could be demagnetized.

### Top view



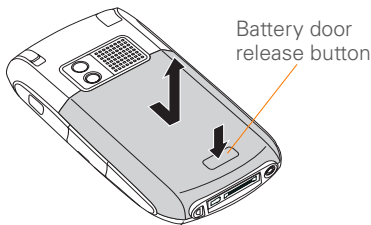
**DID YOU KNOW?** The Ringer switch silences all sounds, including music, at once; you don't need to hunt for "off" or "mute" settings in individual applications.

## Inserting the SIM card and battery

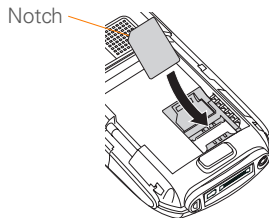
To use your smartphone's phone, email, or web features, you need to insert a SIM card. If a SIM card is not included in your smartphone box, your network operator will provide you with one.

**TIP** If you don't have a SIM card, contact your network operator.

- 1 Use one hand to press the **Battery door release** button, and use your other hand to slide the battery door downward to remove it from your smartphone.



- 2 If the battery is installed, remove it. Slide your finger under the left side of the battery (nearest the stylus) and lift up to remove.
- 3 With the metal contacts facing the battery compartment, slide the SIM card into the cutout in the lower-right corner of the compartment until you feel it snap into place. Align the notches to make sure you have the card oriented correctly.

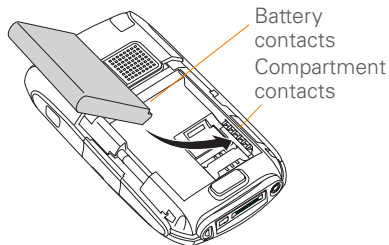


**TIP** To remove the SIM card, press the bottom of the card.

- 4 Align the metal contacts on the battery with the contacts inside the battery compartment, insert the battery into the



compartment at a 45-degree angle, and then press it into place.



- 5 Slide the battery door back into place. Your smartphone screen turns on. Wait for the progress bar to fill and the Windows Mobile® screen to appear.

**TIP** If your smartphone does not turn on after you insert the battery, you need to connect it to the AC charger to charge it; see [Charging the battery](#). If it still doesn't start, perform a soft reset; see [Performing a soft reset](#) for information.

- 6 Follow the onscreen instructions to finish the installation.
- 7 If your SIM card is not already activated, follow the activation steps provided by

your network operator, or contact your network operator directly for assistance. If you plan to use email and web browsing, you need high-speed data service from your network operator in addition to your service contract. You may also need high-speed data service to send and receive multimedia messages.

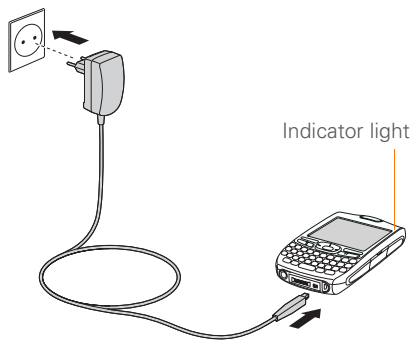
**TIP** You can buy an extra battery as a spare for long airplane trips or periods of heavy data use. To ensure proper functioning, be sure to use batteries from Palm only. Visit [www.palm.com](http://www.palm.com).

## Charging the battery

Although the battery may come with a sufficient charge to complete the setup process, we recommend that after setup you charge your smartphone for three hours (or until the indicator light is solid green) to give it a full charge. See [Maximizing battery life](#) for tips on making your battery's power last longer.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure the battery is inserted before you charge. If you connect your smartphone to a power source without the battery inserted, nothing happens.

- 1 Prepare the AC charger by inserting the adapter that fits the wall outlet you're going to use.
- 2 Plug the AC charger into a wall outlet.
- 3 With the arrow on the connector facing up (toward your smartphone screen), connect the charger cable to the bottom of your smartphone.



- 4 Check the indicator light to confirm that your smartphone is being charged.
  - Solid red indicates that your smartphone is being charged.
  - Solid green indicates that your smartphone is fully charged.

**DID YOU KNOW?** If the battery is low, the indicator light flashes red.

When your smartphone is on (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)), the onscreen battery icon displays the charging status:



A solid lightning bolt indicates that the battery is connected to a wall outlet and is charging.



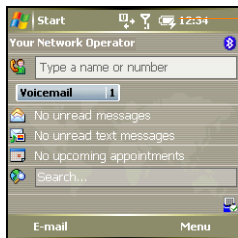
A shaded lightning bolt indicates that the battery is connected to a wall outlet and is fully charged.



A partial battery without a lightning bolt indicates that the battery is not connected to a wall outlet and that it has some power.



An exclamation point (!) indicates that the battery needs to be charged immediately.



Battery icon

**DID YOU KNOW?** If your battery ever becomes fully drained, your info remains safely stored on your smartphone. Recharge the battery to access your info.

## Maximizing battery life

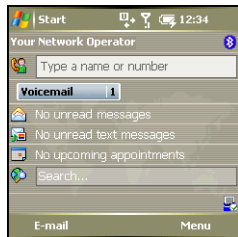
Battery life depends on how you use your smartphone. You can maximize the life of your battery by following a few easy guidelines:

- Charge your smartphone whenever you're at your desk, or charge it overnight each day. The battery in your smartphone has a much longer useful life if you charge it frequently instead of waiting until it's fully drained.

- If you spend a lot of time using the camera, games, media players (including listening to music with wireless headphones using your smartphone's built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology), or other applications, keep an eye on the battery icon and charge when necessary.
- If you are synchronizing email and other information directly with your corporate Exchange Server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®, set the synchronization interval to not more often than every 15 minutes during peak times and every hour (or turned off completely) during non-peak times (see [Setting the synchronization schedule](#)).
- Turn off the Bluetooth feature when you do not need to make a Bluetooth connection (see [Entering basic Bluetooth settings](#)).
- Turn the voice command feature off if you have turned it on (it's off by default; see [Setting up voice commands](#)).


- As with any mobile phone, if you are in an area with no wireless coverage, your smartphone searches for a signal, which consumes power. If you cannot move to an area of better coverage, temporarily turn off your phone (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)).
- Turn down the screen brightness (see [Adjusting the brightness](#)).
- Set your screen to turn off automatically after a shorter period of inactivity (see [Optimizing power settings](#)).
- Turn off the option to receive beamed information (see [Beaming a record](#)).
- Keep your battery away from direct sunlight and other sources of heat. Temperatures over 50 degrees Celsius (120 degrees Fahrenheit) can permanently reduce the capacity and life span of any lithium ion battery.

## Making your first call





- 1 Press **Phone/Send**  to display your Today screen.

**TIP** You can also press **Power/End** to display your Today screen, unless you are on a call. If you're on a call, pressing Power/End hangs up the call.

- 2 If prompted, press **Center**  to turn off **Keyguard** (see [Locking your keyboard \(Keyguard\)](#) for more info).
- 3 Use the number pad on the keyboard to enter the number you want to call.

**TIP** The Dial Lookup list might appear while you are dialing a number. Continue entering numbers to place the call. For more info on the Dial Lookup list, see [Dialing by contact name](#).

- 4 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.
- 5 When your call is complete, press **Power/End**  to end the call.



## Adjusting call volume

While a call is in progress, press the **Volume** button on the side of your smartphone to adjust the call volume.






## What's my number?

Depending on your network operator, you may be able to locate your smartphone's phone number using the Phone Settings screen.

- 1 Make sure your phone is on (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)).

Look here for your phone number



- 2 If you do not see your Today screen, press **Phone/Send** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key).
- 4 Select **Preferences > Phone Settings**.
- 5 On the Phone tab, look for your phone number below the title bar.
- 6 Press **OK** .

**TIP** If your phone number doesn't appear on the Phone Settings screen, your network has not yet sent the number to the SIM card (this does not affect SIM card functionality). Turn your phone off, wait a few hours, and then turn on your phone and repeat these steps. If your phone number still does not appear, please contact your network operator for assistance.

## Setting up synchronization

Once you've finished setting up your smartphone, we recommend that you set up a synchronization method to get the most out of your smartphone. Synchronization allows you to enter or change information on your smartphone or in Microsoft Office Outlook® on your computer; your info is then automatically updated in both places—no need to enter the info twice. See [Synchronizing information](#).



# Moving around on your smartphone

---

Have you ever been to a new city and felt a bit lost until you figured out the streets? Learning to move around on your smartphone is similar. Most applications that work on your smartphone use the same set of controls. So once you learn how to use these controls, you'll be driving all over town and you won't even need a map.

## Benefits

- Quickly move around and complete tasks in applications using one thumb on the 5-way navigator
- Access extra features with menus
- Find and open applications quickly

## In this chapter

---

Navigating around the screen . . . . .	17
Using the keyboard . . . . .	24
Opening and closing applications. . . . .	28
Using your Today screen . . . . .	29



## Navigating around the screen

To navigate around the Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphone screen, you can use the 5-way navigator or you can tap items on the screen with the stylus. As you become familiar with your smartphone, you'll find your own favorite way to scroll, highlight, and select items.

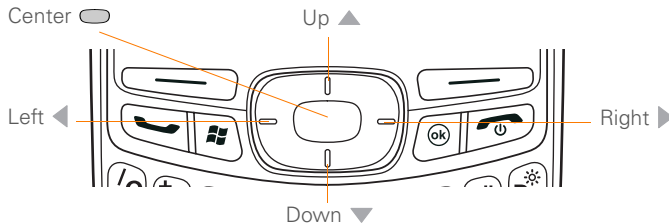
Using the 5-way, press **Right** ▶, **Left** ◀, **Up** ▲, or **Down** ▼ to move around the

screen. Press **Center** ○ to highlight and select items.

**TIP** Some third-party applications may not work with the 5-way navigator, and you must use the stylus instead.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Custom navigation features are available when you browse the web using Internet Explorer. See [Viewing a web page](#).

**TIP** The arrow icons that indicate directions on the 5-way are different from the onscreen scroll arrows and the arrows that indicate that a list is available (see [Selecting options in a list](#)).



## Scrolling through screens

As on a computer, on your smartphone you scroll to move from field to field or page to page, or in some cases to highlight an item or option in a list. There are several methods of scrolling:

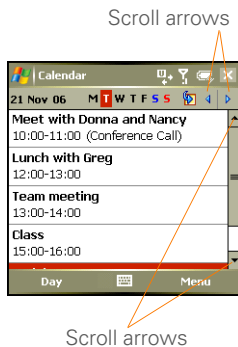
- Press the 5-way on the front of your smartphone. Press **Right** ►, **Left** ◀, **Up** ▲, or **Down** ▼ to move to the next field, button, or action in that direction.
- Press and hold **Option** ⌘ while pressing **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to scroll one screen at a time. These keys work just like the Page Up and Page Down keys on your computer keyboard.

**TIP** Can't find the Option key? See [Using the keyboard](#).

- Press and hold **Option** ⌘ while pressing **Left** ◀ or **Right** ► to jump to the top or bottom of the current document or entry.

**TIP** When you are using applications such as Inbox, Internet Explorer Mobile, and Word Mobile, press and hold Option while pressing **Left** or **Right** on the 5-way to automatically go to the top and bottom of a screen.


- When viewing a screen with tabs, such as when adding a contact, press **Down** ▼ to scroll to the tabs, and then press **Left** ◀ or **Right** ► to move between tabs.
- When inside a text field, press **Right** ► or **Left** ◀ to move to the next character, and press **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to move between lines.
- When inside a list, press and hold **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to rapidly scroll through the list.
- Tap an onscreen scroll arrow.



- Tap and drag the slider of an onscreen scroll bar.

### Closing screens

To accept the information you entered on a screen and to return to the previous screen—or to return to the previous screen without making any changes—do one of the following:

- Press **OK** .
- Use the stylus to tap **ok** or **X** in the upper-right corner of the screen. These buttons are not accessible using the 5-way.

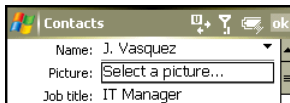
### Highlighting and selecting items

On most screens, one item—a button, a list entry, or a check box—is highlighted by default. The highlight identifies which item is affected by your next action. Use the 5-way to move the highlight from one item to another before opening or selecting it.

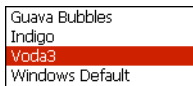
**TIP** The best way to learn to use the 5-way is to experiment. Press the 5-way buttons and as you do, follow the movement of the border around the screen. The behavior of the 5-way varies slightly in each application.


The highlight can take one of two forms, depending on what is highlighted:

- **Border:** This rectangular border highlights items such as an onscreen button (such as OK, Dismiss, or Hide), a check box, an option, or a web link.









- **Reverse type (light text on a dark background):** This highlights items such as a phone number, an email address, text, or an item in a list.



After highlighting an item with the 5-way, you can select or activate it by pressing **Center**  or by tapping the item with the stylus.



### Highlighting text

You can use the 5-way or the stylus to highlight text on the screen:

- **5-way:** Press and hold **Shift** () or () while pressing **Right** , **Left** , **Up** , or **Down**  to extend the highlight in that direction.
- **Stylus:** Tap and drag the stylus across the text you want to highlight. To highlight a word, double-tap it. To highlight a paragraph, triple-tap it.


**TIP** When text is highlighted, you can press **Backspace** to delete the highlighted text.

### Using the action keys

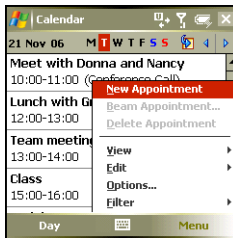
The left and right action keys give you quick access to tasks that you can do on the current screen, so the action key items vary from application to application and from screen to screen. Look on the screen directly above the action key to see the action that it takes in the current context. In some contexts, these keys may do nothing at all. In most cases the right action key  opens the menu, and the left action key  activates a specific command, such as New or Edit. Remember that action key functions vary from screen to screen, so be sure to check the onscreen label before pressing the action keys.











## Selecting menu items

In many applications, a menu provides access to additional features. The menu is hidden until you press Menu  (right action key). To get the most out of your smartphone, it's a good idea to familiarize yourself with the additional features available through the menu in various applications.

- 1 Press **Menu**  (right action key) to display an application's menu.
- 2 Press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight a menu item.



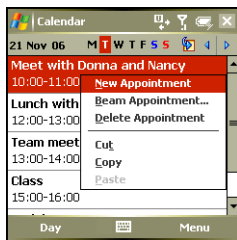
- If an arrow appears next to a menu item, press **Center**  or **Right**  to display additional options for that item, and then press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight a menu item. To return to the main menu without making a selection, press **Left** .
- Press **Center**  to select the menu item, or press **Left**  or **Menu**  (right action key) to close the menu and cancel your selection.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can select most menu items by pressing a key on the keyboard. To quickly access a menu item, press **Menu** (right action key) followed by the underlined letter in the menu item's name.

### Selecting options in a shortcut menu





Most applications also provide access to context-sensitive, shortcut menus—similar to the right-click menus on a computer. The shortcut menu options vary based on the highlighted selection.

- Highlight the item whose shortcut menu you want to see.



- Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu.

**TIP** You can also tap and hold the stylus on an item to open the shortcut menu.

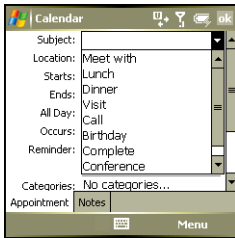
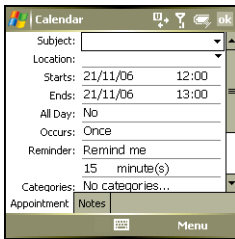
- Press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight a menu item.
- Press **Center**  to select the menu item or press **Left**  to cancel your selection.

### Selecting options in a list

Lists enable you to select from a range of options. You can identify whether a list is available when you select the field. If a rectangle appears around the field along with a downward-pointing arrow, a list is

available. Lists are different from the menus described earlier in this section.

**TIP** When selecting fields you might not see the downward-pointing arrow until you press Center on the 5-way.



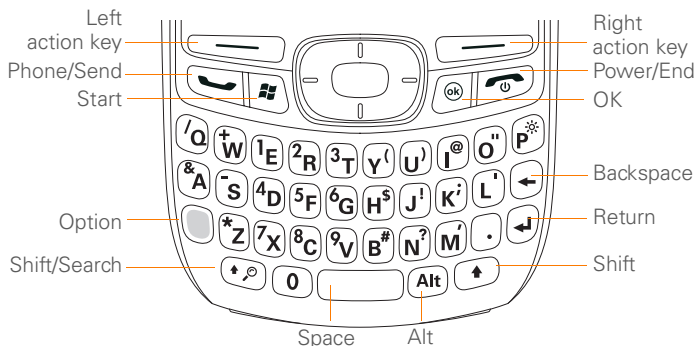
To select from a list, do any of the following:

- Use the 5-way to highlight the field, and then press **Center** to display the items in the list. Press **Up** or **Down** to highlight the item you want, and then press **Center** to make your selection.
- Use your stylus to tap the arrow, and then tap the item in the list.

**DID YOU KNOW?** In fields where you see a downward-pointing arrow but no rectangle, you must tap the arrow with the stylus to expand the field.

- To exit the list and cancel your selection, press **Left**.

## Using the keyboard



**TIP** When using the keyboard, most people find it easiest to hold the smartphone with two hands, using the tips of both thumbs to press the keys.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also use the onscreen keyboard to enter letters, numbers, and other characters in applications that support this feature. Tap the keyboard icon in the center at the bottom of any screen where it appears. After opening the keyboard, you can set various input options by tapping the arrow to the right of the keyboard icon.

### Understanding the keyboard backlight

Your smartphone includes a keyboard backlight for low light conditions. The keyboard backlight activates automatically when the screen turns on. The backlight turns off automatically when the screen turns off or when you are on a call or playing music in the background for longer than the time specified in Backlight Settings. You can set different time intervals depending on whether the smartphone is operating on battery power










or is connected to an external power source. The backlight also turns off when an application's power-saving features turn it off.

**TIP** You can change the backlight shut-off interval. Press **Start** and select **Settings**. Select the **System** tab, and then select **Backlight**. Set the time interval on the Battery Power tab and on the External Power tab.

### Entering lowercase and uppercase letters





By default, the first letter of each sentence or field is capitalized and the remaining text you enter is lowercase. To enter other uppercase letters, do one of the following:

- Press **Shift** ( or ) , and then enter a letter. You don't need to press and hold Shift while entering a letter.
- Press **Shift** ( or ) twice to turn on Caps Lock, and then enter a series of letters. When Caps Lock is on, this symbol appears at the bottom of the screen: . To turn off Caps Lock, press **Shift** ( or ) again.

**TIP** You can turn off the first-letter capitalization setting. For details see [Setting input options](#).

### Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols





Numbers, punctuation, and symbols appear above the letters on the keys. To enter these characters, do one of the following:

- Press **Option** () , and then press the key of the desired character. You don't need to hold Option while pressing the key.
- Press **Option** () twice to turn on Option Lock, and then press the desired keys to enter a series of characters. When Option Lock is on, this symbol appears at the bottom of the screen: . To turn off Option Lock, press **Option** () again.

## Entering other symbols and accented characters

You can enter symbols and accented characters that don't appear on the keys by using the alternate characters list.

**TIP** The alternate characters are grouped according to their similarity to the corresponding key. For example, alternate characters available for the e key include é and è, and the alternate character for the N key is Ñ. If you press the wrong key, press **Backspace** to return to the full list of alternate characters. You can then press another key.

- 1 Press **Alt**  to display the alternate character list.
- 2 Narrow the list by pressing the key that corresponds to the character you want. For example, to enter an é, press e. See the following table for a list of corresponding characters.
- 3 Press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight the desired character.
- 4 Press **Center**  to insert the character.

### Symbols and accented characters

Press Alt <b>(Alt)</b> and enter...	to select...	Press Alt <b>(Alt)</b> and enter...	to select...	Press Alt <b>(Alt)</b> and enter...	to select...
a	á à ã â ã ä å æ	n	ñ	x or X	x ☐
A	Á À Ã Ä Å Æ	N	Ñ	y	ý ŷ
b or B	ß	o	ó ò ö ô œ õ	Y	Ý Ÿ
c	ç ø ©	O	Ó Ò Ö Ô Œ Õ	0	°
C	Ç ø ©	p or P	¶	1	<sup>1</sup> ¼ ½
e	é è ë ê	r or R	®	2	2
E	É Ê Ë Ì	s	ß š	3	<sup>3</sup> ¾
f or F	f	S	ß Š	!	¡
i	í î ï	t or T	™	€	\$ £ ¥ ¢ €
I	Í Î Ï	u	ú ù ü û		
I or L	£	U	Ú Ù Û Ü		

Press Alt **(Alt)** by itself to select these characters:

: & \_ • % = ÷ ^ € £ ¥ ¢ \$ [ ] { } < > « » © ® ° ~ \ Ø μ |

## Opening and closing applications

### Opening applications

You can access all the applications on your smartphone through the Start menu.



- 1 Press **Start**  to open the Start menu.

**TIP** With the Start menu open, press the letter underlined in the application's name to open the app. For example, press **H** to open Help. Or, select the shortcut icons at the top of the Start menu to open recently used applications.

In Programs, press a letter to jump to the first app that begins with that letter. For example, press **C** to jump to Calculator. Press **C** again to jump to Camera, and so on.


**DID YOU KNOW?** You can open apps by pressing and holding **Option** and then pressing **Phone/Send, Start**, or **OK**. You can change which app a button combination opens; see [Reassigning buttons](#) for details.




- 2 Use the 5-way navigator to highlight the application you want to use. To view additional applications, select **Programs**.
- 3 Press **Center**  to open the highlighted application.
- 4 (Optional) Press **OK**  to return to Programs and open another application. The current application continues to run in the background.

### Closing applications

You can have several applications open at once, so you don't need to exit an application to open another one. In most cases, applications close automatically when available memory is low, but you can also close applications manually.


**NOTE** If you press **OK**  to leave an application, the current application continues to run in the background. Manually closing applications helps conserve battery power and frees up memory.

- 1 Press and hold **OK**  to open Memory Settings.
- 2 On the Running Programs tab, do one of the following:
  - Select the application you want to close, and then select **Stop** to close it.
  - Select **Stop All** to close all your open applications.

## Using your Today screen

---

Your Today screen is your home base. From your Today screen you can quickly look up a contact, make a call, see your latest calendar appointments, see the number of unread email messages, and even perform a web search.

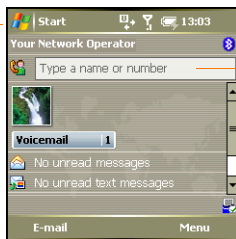
To access your Today screen, press **Phone/Send** .

**TIP** If you press **Phone/Send** while a number is highlighted, your smartphone dials the number. If a number is highlighted and you want to access the Today screen, press **OK** to clear the dial window, or use the Start menu.

**TIP** You can also open the Today screen by pressing **Power/End**, unless you are on a call. If you're on a call, pressing Power/End hangs up the call. If the Today screen is already displayed and you're not on a call, pressing Power/End turns off the screen display.




Title bar and  
status info

Speed-dial  
entries



Dial Lookup field

Scroll down to display Web  
search field

- **Title bar and status info:** See [What are all those icons?](#) to learn about the icons that appear in this area.
- **Dial Lookup field:** Type the number you want to call and press **Center**  to dial, or begin typing a name to look up the associated number in Contacts. See [Dialing by contact name](#) for more info.
- **Web search field:** Enter a web address or a keyword and press **Center**  or **Return**  to view a list of search results based on the address or word (data services connection required).
- **Speed-dial entries:** Select a speed-dial button—either a picture or text—to call the number assigned to it. See [Defining speed-dial buttons](#) to create your own.

**TIP** You can select a picture for your Today screen background and select which items appear in the Today screen. See [Today screen settings](#) for details.



# Your phone

---

The phone, along with the Today screen, is your home base for making and receiving calls.

You can creatively manage multiple calls; for example, you can swap between calls, send text messages to ignored calls, and create conference calls.

And you can do more than manage your phone calls. You can send text messages, open applications, go to your favorite web pages, see your upcoming appointments, and even find out how many unread email messages you have.

## Benefits

- Stay in touch—you choose how
- Work in other applications when on an active call.
- Create speed-dial buttons with pictures of your friends

## In this chapter

---

Turning your smartphone on/off . . . . .	33
Making calls from the Today screen. . . . .	34
Other ways of making calls . . . . .	38
Receiving calls . . . . .	39
Using voicemail . . . . .	40
What can I do during a call? . . . . .	41
How many minutes have I used? . . . . .	47
Defining speed-dial buttons . . . . .	48
Using a phone headset . . . . .	50
Customizing phone settings. . . . .	54
What are all those icons? . . . . .	62




## Turning your smartphone on/off


The term *smartphone* refers to the device and its physical aspects. The term *phone* refers to the wireless feature of your smartphone that enables you to connect to your network operator's network so that you can make and receive calls, and send and receive data.

The phone and the screen of your smartphone can be turned off and on separately. This means you can wake up the screen to use just the organizer features of your device without turning on the phone. Also, when the screen is turned off the phone can be on and ready for you to receive phone calls or messages.

### Turning your phone on

From the Today screen, press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Wireless Manager**, and then select **Phone**. When your smartphone locates a signal, your network operator's name appears in the upper-left of the screen and the



signal-strength  icon appears at the top of the screen.

When you turn on your phone, it connects to a mobile network so that you can make and receive phone calls and use other wireless services (if supported by the local network). When you are inside a coverage area, the signal-strength  icon has bars in it. If you're outside a coverage area, the indicator light flashes amber and no bars appear in the signal-strength icon.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can press and hold the **Power/End** button to turn your phone on and off.


**DID YOU KNOW?** You can go to Wireless Manager by tapping the signal-strength icon and tapping **Wireless Manager**.

### Turning your phone off

From the Today screen, press **Menu**  (right action key)), select **Wireless Manager**, and then select **Phone**. When your phone is off, the phone-off  icon appears at the top of the screen and Phone Off appears in the upper-left of the screen. Your phone is not connected to any mobile network. Although you can no longer use

the phone, you can still use Microsoft Office applications and all the organizer features of your smartphone.

### Waking up the screen and turning it off

Wake up the screen and leave the phone turned off when you want to use only the organizer features of your smartphone, for example, when you're on a plane and want to look at your calendar. You can also turn off your smartphone's screen without turning off your smartphone's wireless features. You can turn your screen on and off by pressing **Power/End** .

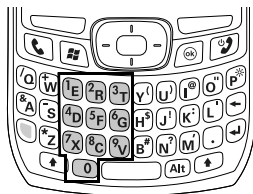
**TIP** You can set how long the screen stays on. Press **Start**, select **Settings**, select the **System** tab, and then select **Power**. Select the **Advanced** tab. Adjust the number of minutes the phone stays on when idle using the **On battery power** setting.

## Making calls from the Today screen

Your smartphone offers several ways to make phone calls from the Today screen.

### Dialing from the Today screen


- 1 Go to your Today screen.



- 2 Using the numbered keys on the keyboard, enter a phone number in the **Dial Lookup** field.

**DID YOU KNOW?** When you're dialing a phone number, you can enter \* and # without first pressing Option. This makes it easy to respond to further dialing instructions.

- 3 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.

**NOTE** You do not need to press Option to access the numbers on the keyboard. However, when dialing short numbers the number may conflict with a contact name. If this occurs, press **Option**  to avoid starting a contact lookup. For emergencies, you can always dial 112 without pressing Option first.


**TIP** If you press **Phone/Send** while a number is highlighted, your device dials the number. If a number is highlighted and you want to access the Today screen, press **OK** to clear the dial window, or use the Start menu.

### Dialing with a speed-dial button


Your smartphone enables you to create both picture and text speed-dial buttons so that you can select a button on the Today screen to quickly dial a number.







**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Create some speed-dial buttons. See [Defining speed-dial buttons](#). You can customize the default speed-dial buttons. See [Editing a speed-dial button](#).

You can make a call using your speed-dial buttons by doing any of the following:

- Select a speed-dial button with the 5-way, and then press **Center** .



- Tap a speed-dial button with the stylus.
- Press and hold the Quick Key that you assigned to the speed-dial button.
- To dial an alternate number for a contact, highlight the speed-dial button and press and hold **Center** , or tap and hold the button, and then select a number from the shortcut menu.

To see more speed-dial buttons, highlight the picture speed-dial area and press **Right**  or **Left**  repeatedly, or highlight the text speed-dial area and press **Up** , **Down** , **Right** , or **Left** .

**TIP** You can hide your speed-dial buttons on your Today Screen and still use your Quick Keys to call a speed-dial number.

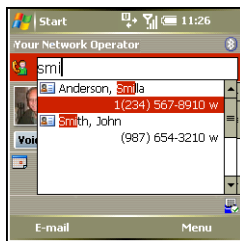
## Dialing by contact name

You can look up contacts quickly by entering just a few letters of a contact's name directly from your Today screen.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Before you can dial a number by contact name, you must create some contacts (see [Adding a contact](#).) or import them by synchronizing (see [Defining speed-dial buttons](#)).

Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Using the keyboard, begin entering one of the following for the contact you want to call:





- First name (JOH for John)
- Last name (SMI for Smith)
- First initial, a space, and then last initial (J S for John Smith)
- First name and last name (JOH SMI for John Smith)

For example, entering SM finds both Smilla Anderson and John Smith. Entering SMA finds only Smilla Anderson.

To clear the Dial Lookup field and start another Contacts search, press **OK**. To delete letters when correcting a misspelled name, press **Backspace**.

**TIP** To see a contact's address, company, and other details, press **Up** to highlight the name and press **Center** on the 5-way.

- 3 Select the number you want to dial.
- 4 Press **Phone/Send**  or press **Center**  to dial.

**DID YOU KNOW?** After you look up a contact, you can select how you want to communicate with that person. Press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, or tap and hold, and then select the communication method you want to use.



### Dialing using the onscreen Dial Pad

The onscreen Dial Pad is useful when you need to dial numbers that are expressed as letters and when you need large numbers that you can tap with your finger or the stylus.


**DID YOU KNOW?** You can paste numbers directly into the Dial Pad. Copy a number from another application, switch to Dial Pad, and then press and hold **Center** on the 5-way to paste the number.








**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your phone is on (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Phone/Send**  and select **Dial Pad**.
- 3 Tap the onscreen Dial Pad to enter the number.
- 4 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.

## Redialing a recently called number

- To dial the last number you called:** Go to your Today screen, and then press and hold **Phone/Send** .



- To select from your most recently dialed numbers:** Go to your Today screen, press **Phone/Send** , highlight the number or contact name you want to call, and then press **Phone/Send**  to dial.
- To select from a chronological list of calls:** Go to your Today screen, press **Phone/Send** , and then select **Call Log**. Highlight the number you want to call, and then press **Call**  (left action key) to dial or press **Phone/Send** .




**TIP** You can also access the Call Log and Dial Pad from the Today screen by pressing **Menu** (right action key).

## Other ways of making calls

Your smartphone offers several other ways to make phone calls than from the Today screen. Try them all and you'll discover which methods you prefer.

### Dialing by company name

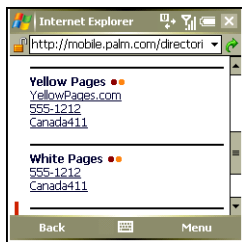
**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your phone is on (see [Turning your phone on](#)).


- Press **Start**  and select **Contacts**.
- Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **View By > Company**.
- Press **Phone/Send**  to go to your Today screen.
- Using the keyboard, begin entering the first few letters of the company name.
- Select the number you want to dial.

6 Press **Phone/Send**  to dial.

### Dialing from a web page or message

Your smartphone recognizes most phone numbers that appear in web pages or in messages (text, email, or multimedia).



- 1 Use the 5-way to highlight the phone number you want to dial in the web page or message.
- 2 Press **Center**  to open the Phone dial box, and then select **Yes** to dial.

**TIP** If you can't dial a phone number directly from a web page or a message, then highlight the number, select **Edit** (right action key), and select **Copy**. Open the Dial Pad, and then press and hold **Center** on the 5-way to paste. Press **Phone/Send** to dial.



## Receiving calls



To receive calls, your phone must be on. This is different from having only the screen turned on (see [Turning your phone on](#)). When your phone is off, your calls go to voicemail.

To see a picture of the person calling you! Learn how to assign a caller ID picture in [Assigning a caller ID ringtone](#).








If music is playing when a call arrives, the smartphone rings softly. You can answer the phone as you normally would. The audio pauses during your call.

To answer a call, do one of the following:

- Press **Phone/Send** .
- Press **Answer**  (left action key).
- If the headset is attached, press the headset button.

To ignore a call and send it to voicemail, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Ignore** or press the **Power/End**  key.

To silence the ringer while your smartphone is ringing:

- Press the **Volume** button or any key on your smartphone except **Phone/Send** , **Power/End** , **Alt** , **Start** , **OK** , or the 5-way.
- To immediately silence all system sounds including the ringer, slide the ringer switch to **Sound Mode Off** . All sounds remain off until you slide the ringer switch back to **Sound On** .

When you silence the ringer, you can either answer the call or let it ring through to voicemail.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also ignore a call and send a text message. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Ignore with text message**.

## Using voicemail

### Setting up voicemail.


- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press and hold **1** on the keyboard or tap the Voicemail speed-dial button to dial your network operator's voicemail system.
- 3 Follow the voice prompts to set up your voicemail.



### Retrieving voicemail messages from the Today screen



**DID YOU KNOW?** When a Voicemail icon appears at the top of the screen, you can tap this icon to retrieve your voicemail.



When you have unretrieved voicemail messages, a Voicemail icon  appears at the top of your screen.

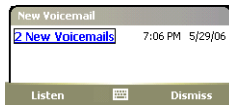
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press and hold **1** on the keyboard to dial your network operator's voicemail system.
- 3 Enter your voicemail password using the keyboard, or press **Extra Digits**  (left action key) if you defined this option (see [Creating a speed-dial button](#) for details).
- 4 Select **Play**  to listen to your messages.



### Retrieving messages from a voicemail notification

**NOTE** Not all service plans support voicemail notification. Check with your network operator for more information.

You can retrieve voicemail messages when you receive a notification or you can dismiss the notification and retrieve the messages later.

- When you have a new voicemail message, a notification screen appears.

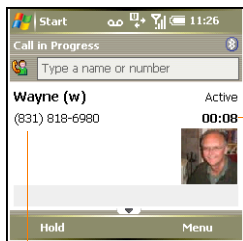


- To hear your message now, press **Listen**  (left action key).
- To retrieve your message later, press **Dismiss**  (right action key).

## What can I do during a call?

Your Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphone offers many advanced telephone features, including call waiting, six-way conferencing, and call forwarding. These features depend on your service plan. Please contact your network operator for more information.

When you make or receive a call, the call info appears on your Today screen.



Caller's name and number

Current duration of call

During a call, you can do any of the following:

- **Navigate around the Today screen:** Use Up ▲ and Down ▼ to move around or highlight items.
- **Put the call on hold:** Press **Hold** (left action key). To take the call off hold, press **Off Hold** (left action key).
- **Use the built-in speakerphone:** Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Speakerphone**. To use the earpiece again, press **Menu** (right action key) again and select **Speakerphone Off**.

(right action key) again and select **Speakerphone Off**.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can send and receive text messages during a call. This is a great way to stay connected with colleagues during a long call.

- **Mute the microphone so you can't be heard:** Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Mute**. To turn the microphone back on, press **Menu** (right action key) again and select **Cancel Mute**.
- **Switch to another application:** Press **Start** (home button) and select the application.

**DID YOU KNOW?** When a call lasts longer than one minute, the screen dims. After two minutes, it dims more. Press any key, except Power/End, to light up the screen.

## Ending a call


Do one of the following:

- Press **Power/End** (power button).
- Press the headset button (if the headset is attached and has a button on it). Some headsets do not have a button.

## Switching applications during an active call

You can use many other applications on your smartphone while holding a phone conversation, including the organizer and text message features. You cannot, however, make some data connections during an active call while connected to a GPRS network. If you're connected to a GPRS network, you cannot browse the web, or send and receive email or MMS messages while on a voice call. If you're connected to a UMTS network, you can perform simultaneous voice and data functions. How can you tell which kind of network you're connected to? See [What are all those icons?](#)


To open an application, see [Opening and closing applications](#).

From any application, press **Phone/Send**  to return to your Today screen.

## Saving phone numbers



After you hang up, you can add the number to Contacts if it's not already in your list. If an incoming call uses caller ID blocking, you do not see the Add Contact prompt.



- To create a new contact for this number, select **Create New Contact**.
- To add this number to an existing contact, select **Copy and Add**, and then select a contact name.
- To decline adding the number, press **Dismiss**  (left action key).
- To permanently disable the Add Contact prompt, select **Don't show this again**.


**TIP** You can also save contact info from other applications, such as Messaging.

If you don't add a number right away, follow these steps to add it later:

- 1 Go to the Call Log (see [Other ways of making calls](#)).
- 2 Highlight the number you want to save.
- 3 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Save to Contacts**.
- 4 Enter the information for the entry.
- 5 Press **OK** .

### Making a second call

You can make a second call while your first call is still active:

- 1 Place your first call on hold by pressing **Hold**  (left action key).







- 2 Dial a second number using any of the methods described in [Making calls from the Today screen](#). If you're dialing by contact name or with the keyboard, you must first use the 5-way to select the Dial Lookup field.

When two calls are active, your Today screen includes two call status sections, each representing one of the calls.



### Answering a second call (call waiting)

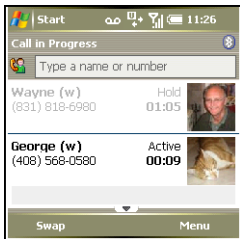
When you're on a call and you receive a second call, the call waiting notification appears if you have chosen to be notified (see [Setting call waiting notification](#)). You can do any of the following:

- **Send the new call to voicemail:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Ignore**.
- **Send the new caller a text message:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Ignore with text message**. The second call is sent to voicemail. A new text message opens with the phone number of the caller entered in the To field.

- **Hang up the current call and answer the new call:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Drop and Answer**. You can also press **Power/End**  to hang up the current call, and then choose to answer or ignore the new call.

**NOTE** If you put the first call on hold, Drop and Answer is not available.

- **Place the current call on hold and answer the new call:** Press **Answer**  (left action key) or **Phone/Send** . Once you have answered the call:



- Press **Swap**  (left action key) to move between callers by placing the

current active call on hold and talking on the other line.

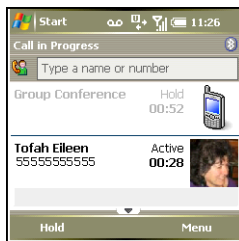
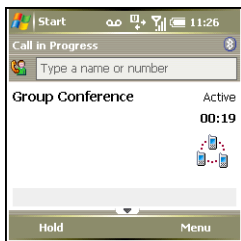
- Make the calls a conference call. See [Making a conference call](#).






### Making a conference call

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Not all service plans support the conference call feature. If you're not sure, check with your network operator to confirm that your service plan includes conference calling.

**IMPORTANT** You can join up to five calls into a 6-way conference call. The number of calls you can join in conference depends on your service plan. Additional charges may apply, and minutes in your mobile account may be deducted for each call. Please contact your network operator for more information.


- 1 Answer a second call or put the first call on hold, and make a second call.




- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and then select **Conference**; this joins the two calls with you in a conference.
- 3 (Optional) Do one or more of the following:
  - Make more calls and join them into the conference call. The number of calls you can join in conference depends on your service plan.
  - Extract a caller from the conference call to talk with them privately by pressing **Menu**  (right action key), selecting **Extract**, and then selecting the name. The extracted call becomes the active call.
- 4 When you're done, do one of the following: If there is no private call, press **Power/End** , to end the conference call. If there is a private call, press **Power/End**  once to end the private call, and press **Power/End**  twice to end all calls.

### Forwarding calls

You can forward calls to another phone number. Please check with your network operator about availability and pricing of forwarded calls; additional charges may apply.

When all calls are forwarded, the call forwarding icon  appears in the title bar.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Preferences**, and then select **Phone Settings**.
- 3 Select the **Services** tab, and then select **Call Forwarding** from the list.
- 4 Set your call forwarding settings. Some of the settings are already set by your network operator to send your calls to Voicemail.

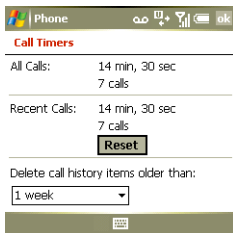




- 5 Press **OK** .

## How many minutes have I used?

Keep in mind that your billing statement may vary slightly from the information you see onscreen. Usage is charged based on your calling plan, and calling plans vary.

- 1 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Call Log**.



- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Call Timers** to view voice minutes.
- 3 (Optional) To reset the Recent Calls counter to zero, select **Reset**.
- 4 Press **OK** .

## Defining speed-dial buttons


Your smartphone enables you to create both picture and text speed-dial buttons so that you can select a button on the Today screen to quickly dial a number.

### Creating a speed-dial button

You can create up to 20 picture buttons and 50 text buttons.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.



- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **New Speed Dial**.
- 3 Do one of the following:

- Select **Link to contact**, select the contact you want to link to this button, and then select the number you want to dial with this button.
  - Select **Label** and enter a name for this button, and then select **Number** and enter the phone number you want to dial with this button.
- 4 (Optional) Enter a Quick Key. When the Today screen is showing, you can press and hold the **Quick Key** to instantly dial this number.

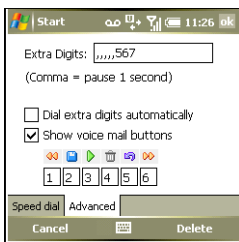
Quick Keys can be letters or numbers, but you can't use both the letter and number on the same key. For example, the voicemail Quick Key is 1. The letter equivalent for that key is E, so you cannot assign E as a Quick Key to another speed-dial button.

- 5 If this button is linked to a contact entry with a picture, select either **Text Speed Dial** or **Picture Speed Dial** to indicate which type of button you want to create. If this button is not linked to a contact or the contact doesn't have a picture, the Picture Speed Dial option is not available.




**TIP** You can add a special ringtone to a contact associated with the speed-dial button. See [Adding a contact](#).

- 6 (Optional) Select the **Advanced** tab and set any of the following options:









**Extra Digits:** Defines additional numbers to dial, such as a password or extension. In addition to numbers, you can enter the following symbols: star (\*) and pound (#). To enter a one-second pause, enter a comma (,).

**Dial extra digits automatically:** Dials predefined Extra Digits immediately after dialing the phone number. If you do not check this box, you need to press


**Extra Digits**  (left action key) to dial these digits.

**Show voice mail buttons:** Displays the voicemail playback controls after you dial this speed-dial number. When this option is checked, you can enter numbers below each control to tailor the controls to your voicemail system.

-  Plays the previous message.
-  Saves the current message.
-  Plays the current message.
-  Deletes the current message.
-  Repeats the current message.
-  Plays the next message.

- 7 Press **OK** .



### Editing a speed-dial button

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Highlight the speed-dial button you want to edit.
- 3 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Edit Speed Dial**.
- 4 Make the desired changes.







- 5 Press **OK** .

**TIP** You can also edit a speed-dial button by pressing **Menu** and selecting **Speed Dial Options**, and then selecting the button you want to edit.

### Deleting a speed-dial button

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Highlight the speed-dial button you want to delete.
- 3 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Edit Speed Dial**.
- 4 Press **Delete**  (right action key).
- 5 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

### Arranging your speed-dial buttons

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Speed Dial Options**.
- 3 Highlight the button you want to move.
- 4 Press **Option**  + **Left**  or **Right**  or **Up**  or **Down**  to move the button in that direction.

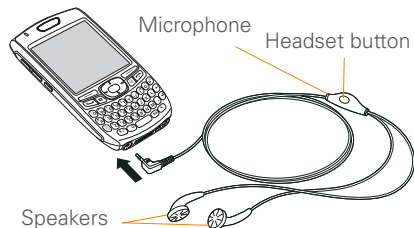
## Using a phone headset

---

You can connect a phone headset for hands-free operation. You can use the headset that came with your smartphone or compatible third-party headsets.

**IMPORTANT** If driving while using a smartphone is permitted where you are and you need to make a call, we recommend using a phone headset or a hands-free car kit (sold separately). If you must use the wired headset while driving, place a speaker in only one ear. Leave the other ear free to hear outside noises. Make such a call only if it is legal to do so and you can do so safely.

## Using a wired headset



The headset button is context-sensitive, and it performs various actions based on the situation. You can press the headset button to perform any of the following tasks:

- Answer an incoming call
- Respond to call waiting
- Hang up all calls
- Swap between calls

**NOTE** Your smartphone works with headsets that have a 2.5mm, 3-pin connector (look for two colored bands on the plug). When in doubt, ask the

third-party headset manufacturer if the product is compatible with Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphones. If you hear a headset buzz or poor microphone performance, your headset may be incompatible with your smartphone.

## Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device


Your smartphone is also compatible with many headsets and car kits (sold separately) enabled with Bluetooth® wireless technology version 1.1 or 1.2.

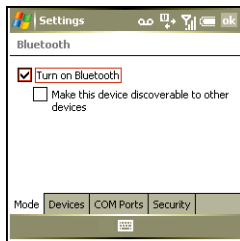
For a list of compatible hands-free devices with Bluetooth wireless technology, go to [www.palm.com/treo750v-support](http://www.palm.com/treo750v-support).

After you set up a connection with a Bluetooth headset or hands-free car kit, you can communicate with that device whenever it is within range and your smartphone's Bluetooth feature is turned on. The range varies greatly, depending on environmental factors; the maximum is about 10 meters (30 feet).

**DID YOU KNOW?** If you have both a compatible Bluetooth headset and car kit, the one you connected to your smartphone last becomes the active device.

**TIP** For information on making Bluetooth connections with other types of devices, see [Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology](#).



- 1 If necessary, prepare the device you want to connect with to accept a new connection. Check the device's documentation for details; be sure to find out if the device has a predefined passkey that you need to enter on your smartphone in step 7.
- 2 Go to your Today screen, and then tap **Bluetooth** .
- 3 Check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box to turn on your smartphone's Bluetooth feature.



- 4 Select the **Devices** tab, and then select **New Partnership**.





- 5 Wait for your smartphone to search for devices and to display the device list.
- 6 Select the device you want to connect to, and then press **Next**  (right action key).
- 7 Enter a passkey between 1 and 16 digits long, and then press **Next**  (right action key).

**IMPORTANT** Some hands-free devices have a predefined passkey; if so, you can find the passkey in the documentation for that device. Other devices provide a screen where you enter a passkey that you make up. In either case, you must use the same passkey on both your smartphone and your hands-free device. We recommend that where possible, you make up a passkey of 16 alphanumeric characters (letters and

numerals only) to improve the security of your smartphone. The longer the passkey, the more difficult it is for the passkey to be deciphered.




**DID YOU KNOW?** The Bluetooth icon on your Today screen indicates the status of your smartphone's Bluetooth feature:

Gray = Bluetooth off.

Blue = Bluetooth on.

White = Connected to a Bluetooth device.

Headset icon = Call in progress with a Bluetooth headset or car kit.



- 8 If the passkey is not predefined, enter the same passkey on the other Bluetooth device, and then press **Finish**  (right action key).
- 9 Check the **Hands Free** box, and then press **Finish**  (right action key).
- 10 Press **OK** .

You can now communicate with this device whenever it is within range and your smartphone's Bluetooth feature is turned on. The range varies greatly, depending on environmental factors; the maximum is about 10 meters (30 feet).

## Using a Bluetooth hands-free device

To learn how to set up and connect to Bluetooth devices, see [Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device](#).

Here are tips for working with a Bluetooth hands-free device:



- To transfer a call from the handset to a Bluetooth hands-free device during a call, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Connect Bluetooth**. To transfer the call back to the headset, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Cancel Bluetooth**.
- To transfer a call from a wired headset to a Bluetooth headset or car kit that is within range and with which you've previously set up a partnership (Bluetooth headset or car kit required, sold separately), unplug the wired headset and press the button on the Bluetooth headset or car kit.
- To find out how to transfer your contacts from your smartphone to your car kit, go to [www.palm.com/ treo750v-support](http://www.palm.com/ treo750v-support).

**DID YOU KNOW?** If you're using a Bluetooth hands-free device and it is within range, your smartphone routes all calls to the hands-free device instead of to your smartphone's earpiece. Bluetooth range is up to 10 meters (30 feet) in optimum environmental conditions.

## Customizing phone settings

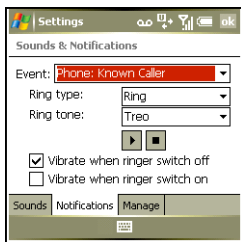
### Selecting ringtones and display notices

You can set different tones for different types of incoming phone calls and notifications. You can download MP3, MIDI, AMR, WAV, and WMA ringtones directly to your smartphone (see [Downloading files and images from a web page](#)). You can also download ringtones to your computer and then email them to your phone.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Sounds & Notifications** .
- 3 Select the **Notifications** tab.

- 4 Select the **Event**, and then select which type of call or notification you want to set the ringtone for:

**Phone: Known Caller:** An incoming call from someone in your Contacts list or Speed Dial list.




**Phone: Missed call:** A call you did not answer.

**Phone: Roaming:** A call that comes in when you're outside your home mobile network.

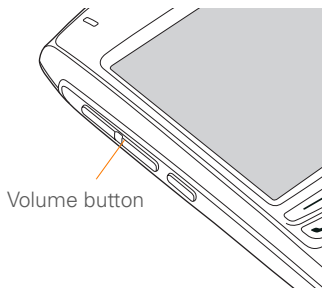
**Phone: Unknown Caller:** An incoming call from someone identified by caller ID who is not in your Contacts list or Speed Dial list.

**Phone: Voice mail:** A new voicemail.

- 5 Check the **Play Sound** box if you want to have a sound played when the event occurs.
- 6 If you checked the **Play Sound** box, then select the sound for the selected type of call. You can also check the **Repeat** box to have the sound repeat.
- 7 (Optional) Select the **Play** icon to preview the sound.
- 8 Check the **Display message on screen** box to have a message displayed when the event occurs.
- 9 Check the **Vibrate when...** boxes to turn the vibrate feature on/off based on the ringer switch setting.
- 10 Repeat steps 4–9 to select ringtones for other types of calls.
- 11 Press **OK** .



**DID YOU KNOW?** You can record, preview, delete, and send sounds on your smartphone. See [Selecting Sounds & Notifications](#). You can also set sounds for messaging notifications and calendar reminders. See [Selecting ringtones and display notices](#).

## Adjusting call and ringer volume



- **Call volume:** While a call is in progress, press the **Volume** button (on the side of your smartphone) to adjust the call volume.
- **Ringer volume:** When a call is not in progress and you are not playing music or a video, press the **Volume** button to adjust ringer volume.

## Assigning a caller ID ringtone

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Contacts**.
- 2 Select the contact's name.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit**.

- 4 Select **Ring tone**.

- 5 Select a tone for this contact entry.

- 6 Select **OK**.

## Enabling TTY

You can enable your smartphone for use with a TTY/TDD device. A TTY (also known as a TDD or Text Telephone) is a telecommunications device that enables people who are deaf or hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.



Your smartphone is compatible with select TTY devices. You can connect a TTY/TDD machine, headset, or hands-free kit to your smartphone through the headset jack while in TTY/TDD mode. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY device for connectivity information. Be sure that the TTY device supports digital wireless transmission.


**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Turn on your phone to access your Phone Settings. See [Turning your phone on](#).



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.






- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Phone** .
- 3 On the **Phone** tab, select **TTY/TDD**, and then select either **On** or **Off**.
- 4 Press **OK** .

**NOTE** When TTY/TDD is on, a TTY/TDD icon  appears at the top of the Today screen.

### Adding Contacts numbers from new callers

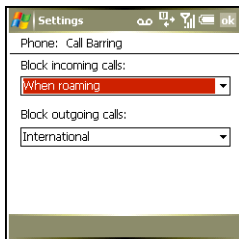
You are prompted to add contact entries for numbers that are not already in your Contacts list.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Phone** .

- 3 On the Phone tab, check the **After calls from numbers that are not in Contacts, ask if I want to add them** box.
- 4 Press **OK** .


### Blocking calls

You can block incoming or outgoing calls.




**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** You need to do the following:

- Make sure that call barring is supported by your service plan. Check with your network operator for more information.
- Get a call barring password from your network operator.

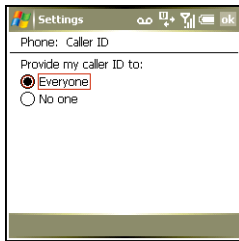
- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
  - 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Preferences**, and then select **Phone Settings**.
  - 3 Select the **Services** tab, and then select **Call Barring** from the list.
  - 4 Select the **Block incoming calls** list, and then select one of the options:
    - Off:** No incoming calls are blocked.
    - When roaming:** All incoming calls are blocked when roaming.
    - All calls:** All incoming calls are blocked.
  - 5 Select the **Block outgoing calls** list, and then select one of the options:
    - Off:** No outgoing calls are blocked.
    - International:** All outgoing international calls are blocked.
    - International except to home country:** All outgoing international calls are blocked except to the country where the phone is based.

**All calls:** All outgoing calls are blocked.


- 6 Press **OK** .
- 7 Enter the call barring password and select **Done**  (right action key).


## Setting caller ID

You can turn caller ID on or off.



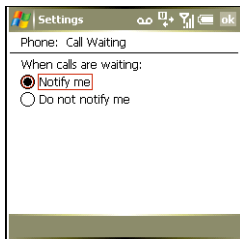
**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Preferences**, and then select **Phone Settings**.



- 3 Select the **Services** tab, and then select **Caller ID** from the list.
- 4 Check the appropriate box to provide your caller ID to **Everyone** or **No one**.
- 5 Press **OK** .

### Setting call waiting notification

You can choose to be notified when you receive a call while you are on a call. You can choose to accept the call or not. See [Answering a second call \(call waiting\)](#).

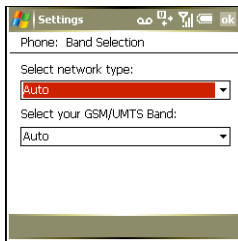


**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).



- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Preferences**, and then select **Phone Settings**.
- 3 Select the **Services** tab, and then select **Call Waiting** from the list.
- 4 Check the appropriate box to receive notification or not.
- 5 Press **OK** .

### Manually selecting your wireless band

The wireless band setting is preset for optimum performance. Do not change this setting unless instructed to do so by your network operator's representative.



**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Preferences**, and then select **Phone Settings**.
- 3 Select the **Services** tab, and then select **Band Selection** from the list.
- 4 Select the **Select network type** list, and and select one of the following:
  - Auto:** Automatically selects a network.
  - GSM:** Connects only to GSM networks.
  - UMTS:** Connects only to UMTS networks.
- 5 Select the **Select your GSM/UMTS Band** list, and then select one of the bands:
  - Auto**
  - GSM (900+1800) + UMTS 2100**
  - GSM (1900+850) + UMTS (1900+ 850)**
- 6 Press **OK** .

## Enabling fixed dialing





Fixed dialing allows you to restrict your outgoing calls and messages to selected phone numbers, included in your fixed dialing list. Once the service is activated, you can call and send messages only to the phone numbers from the list.

The list is protected by a PIN2. If you enter an incorrect PIN2 more times than allowed by your network operator, the SIM card locks. Once the SIM card locks, you need the PUK2 to unlock the SIM card. Contact your network operator for more information and the PUK2.



**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** You need the following:

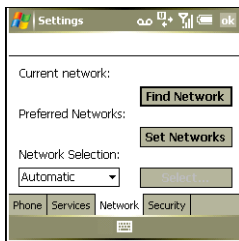
- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).
- Get your PIN2 from your network operator.

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Preferences**, and then select **Phone Settings**.
- 3 Select the **Services** tab, and then select **Fixed Dialing** from the list.
- 4 Check the **Enable fixed dialing** box.
- 5 Press **Menu**  (right action key) to add, delete, or edit the phone numbers in the list.
- 6 Enter your PIN2 and press **Done**  (left action key).
- 7 Press **OK** .


### Manually selecting your network settings

The network setting is preset for optimum performance. Do not change this setting


unless instructed to do so by your network operator's representative.



**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your phone on](#)).

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Preferences**, and then select **Phone Settings**.
- 3 Select the **Network** tab.
- 4 To switch to another network, select **Find Network** and select an available network.
- 5 To change your preferred network, select **Set Networks**, check the box

next to the networks you want, and then select your order of preference.

- 6 From the **Network Selection** list, select an option:
  - **Automatic:** The network connection is automatically made.
  - **Manual:** Network connections are manually made. If you are manually selecting a network, select a network from the list of available networks.
- 7 Press **OK** .

## What are all those icons?

You can monitor the status of several items using icons at the top of your Today screen:



You missed an incoming call.



You have a voicemail message.



You have a new email message.



You have a new text, or multimedia message.



No SIM inserted in device or software unable to find SIM.



You have more than one of the conditions listed above.



Your phone is on. The bars display the signal strength. The stronger the signal, the more bars appear. If you are outside a coverage area, no bars appear.



Your phone is off.



You are outside your network operator's coverage area and roaming on another network operator's network.



A voice call is in progress.



TTY/TDD is turned on.



All calls are being forwarded.



Your phone is connected to a UMTS network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.



Your phone is on and a UMTS data connection is active. You can make and receive calls and transmit data simultaneously.



Your phone is connected to a GPRS (EDGE if available) network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.



Your phone is on and a GPRS (EDGE if available) data connection is active. You can still make or receive calls, but the data transmission is automatically interrupted during a call.



ActiveSync synchronization is in progress.



Your smartphone is connecting to a computer or network.



A data connection is not available or your phone is off.



Your smartphone's battery is low.



Your smartphone's battery is charging.



Your smartphone is connected to a power outlet and the battery is fully charged.

Network operator name

Your phone is on and you are in your network operator's coverage area. If you are outside a coverage area, No service or Roaming appears instead. Data services may not be available when you are roaming on partner networks. When you turn off your phone, Phone Off appears instead.



The Bluetooth® wireless technology status indicator appears in gray when this feature is off, in blue when this feature is on, and in reverse blue when your smartphone is communicating with another Bluetooth device.



A call is in progress and your smartphone is connected to a Bluetooth headset or car kit.







# Synchronizing information

---

Synchronizing simply means that information that has been entered or updated in one place—your smartphone, your computer, or your corporate server—is automatically updated in the other. There’s no need to enter information twice. Some kinds of synchronization can happen on an automated schedule, so you don’t even have to think about it.

After you get into the habit of synchronizing regularly, you’ll know what a powerful tool synchronization is for transferring, updating, and backing up large amounts of information on your smartphone.

## Benefits

- Quickly enter and update information on your computer and your smartphone
- Send photos and videos to your smartphone from your desktop computer
- Protect your information

## In this chapter

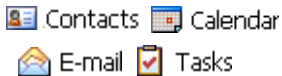
---

How do I synchronize? . . . . .	68
What can I synchronize? . . . . .	69
Setting up wireless synchronization. . . . .	70
Setting up your computer for synchronization . . . . .	74
Synchronizing using the sync cable . . . . .	78
Other ways to synchronize. . . . .	79
Setting synchronization options . . . . .	81

This chapter discusses using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync® and other methods to synchronize your smartphone and your computer.

Synchronization enables you to enter or change information on your smartphone or in Microsoft Office Outlook®. Your info is then automatically updated in both places; there's no need to enter the info twice. This is true whether you sync wirelessly with your company's Exchange Server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync (see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#)) or with your computer using ActiveSync desktop software (see [Setting up your computer for synchronization](#)).

By default, the info from the following applications is synchronized for either method of synchronization:



You can, however, customize sync settings to suit your needs and sync only some of these applications.

If you set up ActiveSync synchronization with your computer, information in the Favorites application is synchronized by default as well. You can also change settings to synchronize Word, Excel, PowerPoint, and PDF files, as well as pictures, music, videos, and other types of files (see [Changing which applications sync](#)). For synchronization of music and videos, you also must have Windows Media® Player 10 on your computer.

**DID YOU KNOW?** When you sync Favorites, it creates a folder in your computer's web browser called Mobile Favorites that backs up any favorites you create in the browser on your smartphone. You can add or remove favorites directly to or from the folder.

**TIP** If you don't already have Windows Media Player installed on your computer, you can install it from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*. Insert the CD into your computer's CD drive, select **Add Programs**, and then select **Windows Media Player**.

You can set up your smartphone to use any combination of wireless sync, ActiveSync synchronization, and Windows Media Player sync.

## How do I synchronize?

---

There are a number of ways to make synchronization occur. You may be able to synchronize wirelessly with an Exchange Server, or you can install ActiveSync desktop software on your computer to synchronize in one of a number of ways. You can, of course, choose to sync both with an Exchange Server and with ActiveSync desktop software to maximize your sync options.

### Synchronizing wirelessly with the server

You can set up your smartphone to synchronize wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2 using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync; see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#). If you choose this method, synchronization takes place automatically after setup; you do not need to install the software from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*, which came with your smartphone.

**NOTE** We recommend that you install ActiveSync desktop software from the CD even if you synchronize wirelessly with the server. You need ActiveSync to synchronize pictures, videos, music files, and other info directly with your computer.

### Synchronizing with ActiveSync desktop software

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Install the software from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*, which came with your smartphone. You must install this software even if you have already installed a previous version of ActiveSync desktop software. See [Installing the desktop synchronization software](#) for instructions.

If you install ActiveSync desktop software from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*, you can choose to synchronize in any of the following ways:

- By connecting your smartphone to your computer using the sync cable; see [Synchronizing using the sync cable](#)
- Wirelessly, using your smartphone's built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology;

see [Synchronizing over a Bluetooth connection](#)

- Wirelessly, using your smartphone's infrared (IR) port; see [Synchronizing over an infrared connection](#)

## What can I synchronize?

This table lists the types of info you can synchronize and the methods to use.

Info type	Method	Where to learn more
Outlook Contacts, Calendar, Tasks	Exchange ActiveSync (direct sync with server) or ActiveSync (sync with computer)	<a href="#">Setting up wireless synchronization</a> or <a href="#">Setting up your computer for synchronization</a>
Outlook Email	Exchange ActiveSync or ActiveSync	<a href="#">Setting up wireless synchronization</a> or <a href="#">Setting up your computer for synchronization</a>
Word, Excel, PowerPoint, PDF files	ActiveSync	<a href="#">Setting up your computer for synchronization</a> <a href="#">Changing which applications sync</a>
Music and video files	ActiveSync and Windows Media Player 10	<a href="#">Setting up your computer for synchronization</a> <a href="#">Changing which applications sync</a> <a href="#">Transferring media files to your smartphone</a>

Info type	Method	Where to learn more
Pictures	ActiveSync	<a href="#">Setting up your computer for synchronization</a> <a href="#">Changing which applications sync</a>
Outlook Notes	ActiveSync	<a href="#">Setting up your computer for synchronization</a> <a href="#">Changing which applications sync</a>
Files to be transferred to an expansion card	ActiveSync	<a href="#">Setting up your computer for synchronization</a> <a href="#">Changing which applications sync</a>

## Setting up wireless synchronization

Does your company use Microsoft Outlook as its email solution? Does your company also use Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 as its email server? If so, you may be able to wirelessly synchronize the email and other Outlook info on your smartphone and the same info stored on the Exchange Server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Because your desktop copy of Outlook also syncs with the corporate server, whatever is synchronized wirelessly to the server from your smartphone also shows up in your desktop copy of Outlook; and whatever you enter or change in Outlook on your computer syncs to the server and then shows up on your smartphone.

When the Exchange Server is upgraded to Service Pack 2, you may be able to take advantage of the additional features of Direct Push Technology. Direct Push Technology is a two-way wireless delivery

method that keeps your Outlook information always up-to-date and provides more efficient communication between the server and your smartphone. It includes features like Global Address List, Tasks Over The Air (OTA), and IP-based push updating of Calendar, Messaging, and Email.




**NOTE** Even if you sync with an Exchange Server, we recommend that you install ActiveSync desktop software as well, to take full advantage of your smartphone's capabilities.

To synchronize wirelessly, you need to set up an Exchange Server Account. Work with your system administrator to gather the following info, and then follow the steps in this section to set up an account.

- Mail server address and domain name
- The username and password you use to access the corporate mail server
- Security connection: Does your server use an encrypted (SSL) connection?

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.



- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Add Server Source**.
- 4 Enter the server address, and then press **Next**  (right action key).
- 5 Enter the username and password you use to access your corporate mail server, and then enter the Exchange Server domain. Check the box if your server uses an encrypted connection. You can't see your password as you enter it, so be careful. Be sure Caps Lock and Option Lock are not on unless you need them. For info on how to enter characters, see [Entering lowercase and](#)

uppercase letters and Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols.



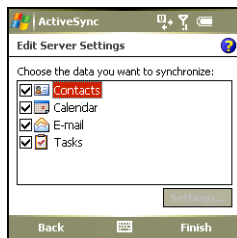
**TIP** The Exchange Server settings are case-sensitive. Be sure to enter uppercase and lowercase letters properly.

## 6 Check the **Save password** box.

**TIP** Ask your system administrator if it is OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone (for increased security, you may need to enter your password each time you access your email). If it is not OK, you must synchronize manually (see [Initiating a wireless sync manually](#)).

## 7 (Optional) Select **Advanced** to set the rules for fixing sync conflicts.

## 8 Press **Next** (right action key) and check the boxes for the types of information you want to synchronize with Exchange Server.



## 9 (Optional) Highlight one of the items and select **Settings** to change the synchronization settings for that type of information. Settings are not available for all items.

**TIP** If you want to download more than the email message header, select **E-mail** in step 9 and increase the KB setting. If you don't increase this setting, you can manually download the rest of the message at your convenience.

## 10 Press **Finish** (right action key). Synchronization with your Exchange



Server begins automatically. A status bar appears onscreen, indicating sync progress.




You can set a schedule for synchronization to take place any time info is updated on either your smartphone or the server or at certain intervals (see [Setting the synchronization schedule](#)), or allow synchronization to take place only when you initiate it manually (see [Initiating a wireless sync manually](#)).

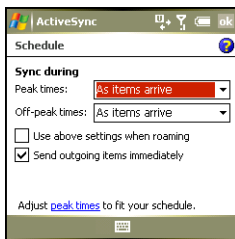
### Setting the synchronization schedule

You can set a synchronization schedule in either of the following situations:

- If your Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 is upgraded to Service Pack 2:** By default, wireless sync takes place any time info is updated on either your smartphone or the server using Direct Push Technology. To save battery life, however, you can set synchronization to take place at intervals that you specify.
- If your Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 is not upgraded to Service Pack 2:** By default, wireless sync does not take place automatically. Set a

synchronization schedule to have sync take place either any time info is updated on your smartphone or the server, or at certain intervals.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Schedule**.



- 4 Set any of the following options:
  - Peak times:** Sets the frequency for high-traffic time periods such as when you are at work or when email volume is high.
  - Off-peak times:** Sets the frequency for low-traffic time periods such as late at night.

**Use above settings while roaming:**

Sets the frequency while you are roaming outside your wireless network. To minimize roaming charges, uncheck this box and synchronize manually while roaming.


**Send outgoing items immediately:**

Sets whether items are sent as soon as you select Send in the Inbox application, or whether they are held until the next synchronization.

- 5 Press **OK** .

**Initiating a wireless sync manually**

If you want to control exactly when a wireless sync takes place, or if it is not OK to store your corporate email password on your smartphone, you can initiate the sync manually.

- 1 To set up a manual sync, follow the previous procedure, [Setting the synchronization schedule](#). In the Peak times and Off-peak times lists, select **Manual**.
- 2 To initiate a manual sync, press **Start**  and select **Programs**.

- 3 Select **ActiveSync** .

- 4 Press **Sync**  (left action key).

## Setting up your computer for synchronization

---

Even if you are synchronizing email, contacts, calendar events, and tasks directly with Exchange Server 2003, we recommend that you install the ActiveSync desktop software from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* so that you can sync your smartphone directly with your computer. Why? Using ActiveSync enables you to synchronize additional info such as pictures, videos, music files, Microsoft Office files, and notes, so you can create and work on files on your smartphone and then sync changes to your computer, where you then have a backed-up and up-to-date copy of important info.

**TIP** If you want to synchronize with a personal information manager (PIM) other than Microsoft Office Outlook, you must install a third-party solution. Contact the PIM's vendor to learn if software is available for your Treo 750v smartphone.

Before you can synchronize directly with your computer, you need to install the desktop synchronization software and connect the sync cable to your computer. Even if you have already installed a previous version of ActiveSync desktop software, you must install the software that came with your smartphone on the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*.

### System requirements

Your computer must meet the following minimum system requirements:

- Windows 2000 or XP (later versions may also be supported)
- 32MB of available memory (RAM)
- 170MB of free hard disk space
- CD drive
- Available USB port

## Installing the desktop synchronization software

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** If you are installing the software on a computer at work, make sure your company allows you to install new software. Contact your company's IT department for help.

- 1** Close any applications that are currently running on your computer, including those running in the background. Your computer needs to have all its resources available to install the software.
- 2** Insert the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* into the CD drive on your computer.
- 3** Follow the installation instructions on your computer.

During installation, you connect your smartphone to your computer and sync for the first time. Be sure to watch what's happening on both your computer and your smartphone. For more info, see [Connecting your smartphone to your computer and Synchronizing information](#).

**DID YOU KNOW?** During software installation, you can select an option to synchronize email, contacts, calendar events, and tasks directly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003. If you choose this option, you are prompted to enter your mail server address and domain name and your Exchange Server account username and password.

**TIP** You can also install additional software from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*; see [Installing bonus software from the CD](#).

## Using ActiveSync desktop software


After you install ActiveSync desktop software, synchronization happens automatically anytime you connect your smartphone to your computer, as described in the next section. However, you can open the ActiveSync window on your computer to do tasks such as the following:

- Install applications from your computer to your smartphone (see [Installing applications from your computer](#)) or to an expansion card inserted into your smartphone's expansion card slot (see

### [Installing applications onto an expansion card](#))

- Change which applications synchronize
- Enter settings to synchronize wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also change which applications synchronize (see [Changing which applications sync](#)) and enter settings to synchronize wirelessly (see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#)) in the ActiveSync app on your smartphone. Whether you enter changes on your smartphone or your computer, the changes are transferred to the other location the next time you synchronize.

To open the ActiveSync window, double-click the **ActiveSync** icon  in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your computer screen.

**TIP** If the ActiveSync icon does not appear in the taskbar, go to **Start**, navigate to **Programs**, and select **Microsoft ActiveSync** to open the ActiveSync window.

Desktop software installation also creates a Mobile Device folder on your computer, which you can see when you open My Computer or Windows Explorer. When your smartphone is connected to your computer, opening the Mobile Device folder displays an icon representing your smartphone. It also displays folders containing items you synchronized, such as music files, pictures, and videos.

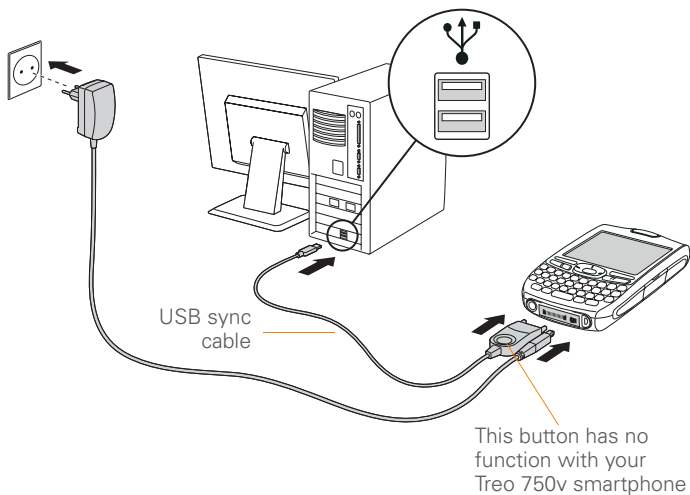
### Connecting your smartphone to your computer

- 1 Prepare the AC charger by inserting the adapter that fits the wall outlet you're going to use.
- 2 Plug the AC charger into a wall outlet.
- 3 Plug the USB sync cable into an available USB port or into a powered USB hub on your computer.

**TIP** For best performance, plug your sync cable directly into a USB port on your computer. If your computer has USB ports on both the front and back, we suggest using the back port. If you use a USB hub, make sure it's a powered hub.

- 4 Connect the sync cable to your smartphone by inserting it into the two sockets to the left on the bottom of the smartphone.
- 5 Connect the charger cable to the remaining socket on the bottom of your smartphone.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The AC charger contains an indicator light that glows when the charger is connected to a power source.



## Synchronizing using the sync cable



After you install ActiveSync desktop software, synchronization takes place automatically anytime your smartphone is

connected to your computer and info is updated in either location.

- 1 Connect your smartphone to your computer. You should hear the ActiveSync® tone.



This button has no function with your Treo 750v smartphone

- 2 Look for the **ActiveSync** icon  at the top of your smartphone's screen and the **ActiveSync** icon  in the taskbar on your computer.
  - If you don't see the ActiveSync icon, make sure the desktop synchronization software that came with your smartphone is running on your computer.
  - If you have any problems synchronizing, see [Synchronization](#) for troubleshooting suggestions.

**TIP** We recommend that you install the backup and restore app from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*. A backup and restore app preserves your data and settings if your smartphone is ever lost or stolen, and it protects your data during a hard reset.

## Other ways to synchronize







### Synchronizing over a Bluetooth connection

You can wirelessly synchronize your computer and smartphone using Bluetooth wireless technology.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Do the following:


- Make sure your computer is equipped with Bluetooth® wireless technology.
- If you did not do so during initial setup, install the ActiveSync Plug-in for Bluetooth wireless technology from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*.

**TIP** To install the plug-in for Bluetooth technology, insert the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* into your computer's CD drive, and then select **Add Programs**. Select the plug-in option on the Add Programs screen and follow the onscreen instructions.

- 1 On your computer, right-click the **ActiveSync** icon  in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of the screen, and select **Connection Settings**.
- 2 Check the **Allow connections for one of the following** box, and then select **Bluetooth**.
- 3 On your smartphone, press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 4 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Bluetooth** .
- 5 Check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box to turn on your smartphone's Bluetooth feature.
- 6 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 7 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 8 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Connect via Bluetooth**.

9 If this is the first time you're making a Bluetooth connection to this computer, follow the onscreen prompts to set up a Bluetooth partnership with this computer. See [Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology](#) for more information on partnerships.


10 Select **Sync**.

11 When synchronization has finished, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Disconnect Bluetooth**.



### Synchronizing over an infrared connection

If your computer has an IR (infrared) port, you can synchronize with your computer wirelessly using your smartphone's IR port.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your computer is equipped with an IR port.

- 1 Set up your computer to receive infrared beams. See ActiveSync Help on your computer for details.
- 2 Point your smartphone's IR port directly at the IR port on your computer.
- 3 On your smartphone, press **Start**  and select **Programs**.



- 4 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 5 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Connect via IR**.
- 6 Select **Sync**.

### Synchronizing with multiple computers

You can set up your smartphone to synchronize with up to two computers as well as with Exchange Server 2003. When synchronizing with multiple computers, the items that you synchronize appear on all the computers.

For example, if you set up to sync your smartphone with two computers named C1 and C2, when you sync Contacts and Calendar on your smartphone with both computers, you get the following results:

- The contacts and calendar appointments that were on C1 are now also on C2.
- The contacts and calendar appointments that were on C2 are now also on C1.
- The contacts and calendar appointments from both computers are on your device.




**NOTE** Microsoft® Office Outlook® E-mail can synchronize with only one computer.

## Setting synchronization options

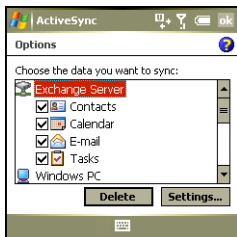
---

### Changing which applications sync

You must select sync options if you want to synchronize notes, pictures, and other types of files.




- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 4 Do any of the following:
  - Check the box next to any items you want to synchronize. If you cannot check a box, you might have to uncheck a box for the same information type elsewhere in the list.
  - Uncheck the box next to any items you want to stop synchronizing.

- Select an item and then select **Settings** to customize the settings for that item. Settings are not available for all items.



## Stopping synchronization

If you ever need to manually stop synchronization, follow these steps:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Stop**  (left action key).

**TIP** To stop synchronizing all items on a computer, select the computer name and then select **Delete**.



# Your email

---

You already know how efficient email is for staying in touch. Now your smartphone brings you a new level of convenience: email on the go. Enjoy the ease and speed of communicating with friends, family, and colleagues anywhere you can access your network operator's data network.

You can send photos to your friends and family, or create Microsoft Word or Excel files and send them to your colleagues. You can also receive attachments to view and edit at your convenience.

## Benefits

- Receive photos, sound files, Word and Excel files, and more
- Attach and send files of almost any type
- Save messages from your computer to view at a convenient time

## In this chapter

---

Setting up. . . . .	85
Sending and receiving messages . . . . .	89
Working with email messages. . . . .	93
Sending email messages from within another application. . . . .	97

## Setting up

---

You can use the Inbox application to send and receive email. Before you use your smartphone to send or receive messages, consult your network operator for pricing and availability of email services and data rate plans.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Do the following:

- Make sure your phone is on before you send or receive messages.
- If you want delivery of Outlook email using Direct Push Technology, make sure that your IT organization has upgraded your Exchange Server 2003 to Service Pack 2.

### Entering settings for an email account

You can use your smartphone to access the many kinds of email you may use: corporate, ISP (like EarthLink and Comcast), and web-based (like Gmail and Yahoo! Mail Plus). Before you can send and receive email on your smartphone, you need to decide which type of email account you want to access. The setup process is different for each email account

type, so it is very important that you select the correct type.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can enter settings for more than one email account, and you can use different email setup applications on your smartphone to enter settings for different accounts, depending on which app best meets your needs.

**NOTE** Once you go through the setup process for your email account, you use the Inbox application on your smartphone to send and receive email. The Inbox application is the home base for viewing and sending messages for all your email accounts.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Operator-provided push mail is different from the Direct Push Technology used to synchronize email wirelessly with an Exchange Server.



Email account type	Type of email you can access	How to set up
POP/IMAP	You can obtain mail from an ISP or Internet mail account such as EarthLink, or from a small business or corporate Internet mail account.	See <a href="#">Setting up an IMAP or POP email account</a> .
Operator-provided push mail	Your network operator most likely offers services for accessing personal and corporate email accounts. Please refer to your network operator or IT organization for additional information about these email services.	See <a href="#">Setting up an operator-provided push email account</a> .  You may need to contact your network operator to check if your subscription is enabled for push email.
Microsoft Exchange Server	You can retrieve corporate email using a Microsoft Exchange Server. Wireless email access can be supported if your company is using the Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®.	See <a href="#">Setting up wireless synchronization</a> .  You may need to check with your IT organization to ensure that Exchange ActiveSync is supported and to obtain the configuration settings.
Free web-based email	You can access mail from Hotmail and other free web-based systems.	Access the email website directly using your smartphone's web browser.

**TIP** Use the web browser to view your free Yahoo! mail account on the web.

## Setting up an operator-provided push email account

Your push email account provides secure, remote access to corporate and personal email, contacts, calendar, tasks, and desktop files directly from your smartphone.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your phone is on.



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Email Setup** .
- 3 Follow the onscreen instructions for downloading and installing the software.

## Setting up an IMAP or POP email account


You can send and receive email messages using an email account that you have with an Internet service provider (ISP), an email account that you access using a VPN server connection (such as a work account), or any other IMAP or POP email account.

**TIP** If you have problems configuring your account, go to [www.palm.com/emailsetup](http://www.palm.com/emailsetup) for more information.

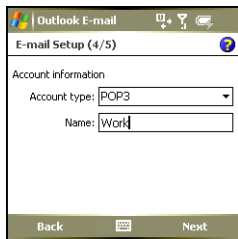
**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Work with your email provider or system administrator to gather the following info:

- Account type (POP3 or IMAP)
  - Mail server name for receiving mail
  - Mail server name for sending mail
  - Your username and password
  - Any special security requirements
- 1 Go to your Today screen.
  - 2 Press **E-mail**  (left action key).
  - 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > New Account**.

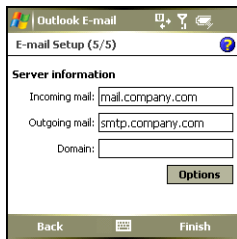
**DID YOU KNOW?** On the Accounts tab in Messaging Options, an asterisk appears next to the accounts you create.

- 4 Enter the email address that you want to set up, and then press **Next**  (right action key).

- 5 The setup process searches an online database to obtain the settings for your account. When the Status box displays Completed, press **Next** (right action key). If no settings are returned, enter the settings you obtained from your email provider, and then press **Next** (right action key).
- 6 Enter your name, username, and password.
- 7 If you want to enter your password each time you access this account, do not check the **Save password** box. If you want your password entered automatically, check this box.
- 8 Press **Next** (right action key).
- 9 Select the Account type list, and then select **POP3** or **IMAP**.




- 10 Enter a name for this account, and then press **Next** (right action key). For example, if this is your work email account, enter “Work” or your company’s name.
- 11 Enter the name of the Incoming mail and Outgoing mail servers.



**NOTE** Do not enter anything in Domain. It is not needed for POP3 or IMAP accounts.

**TIP** If you are unable to send mail using your email provider’s or corporate mail system’s outgoing mail server, contact your network operator to see if you are required to use their server and, if so, to obtain the server name.




- (Optional) Select **Options** to select download settings for this account.
- Press **Finish**  (right action key).





**TIP** To delete an email account or to edit account settings—for example, if you need to change the name of the outgoing mail server—press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**. To delete an account, highlight the account you want press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **Delete**. To edit an account, select the account and change the settings you want to edit.

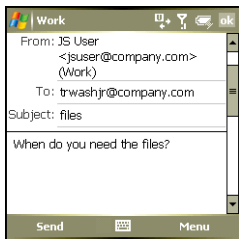
## Sending and receiving messages

### Creating and sending an email message

- Go to your Today screen.
- Press **E-mail**  (left action key).

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also access the Inbox application from the Start menu.

- Press **Left**  to cycle through your Inbox accounts until you see the right email account name in the title bar.
- Press **New**  (left action key).
- Enter the recipient's email address. Here are some shortcuts:
  - If the recipient's name and email address are in your Contacts list, enter the first few letters of the recipient's first or last name, and then select the recipient's name.
  - If the recipient's name is in an online address book, you can find the name and add it. See [Using an online address book](#).
- DID YOU KNOW?** When addressing a message, you can enter the contact's first and last initials separated by a space.
- Select **Subject** and enter a title for the message.
- Press **Down**  to go to the body of the message. Enter your message, or press **Menu** , select **My Text**, and then select a predefined phrase you want to insert.



- 8 (Optional) Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Insert**. Select the type of item you want to attach, and then select the file or record a voice note.

**TIP** You can send an email message with a file attached from directly within other applications on your smartphone; see [Sending email messages from within another application](#).

- 9 (Optional) Press **Menu** (right action key) and do one or both of the following:
- Select **Spell Check**. When the spell check is complete, press **OK**.

- Select **Message Options**. Select the **Priority** list, select a setting for the message, and then press **OK**.

## 10 Press **Send** (left action key).

**TIP** To save memory on your smartphone, turn off the option to save sent messages in the Saved folder. In the Inbox, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**. Select **Message**, and then uncheck the **Keep copies of sent items in Sent folder** box.

## Receiving email messages

How you receive email messages depends on the type of account you are using and how you synchronize:




- If you set up a push email account, new email messages are sent to your smartphone as they appear on the server.
- If you synchronize wirelessly with your Exchange Server using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync, new email messages are sent to your smartphone when they appear on the server, according to the schedule you set up (see [Setting the synchronization](#)).

schedule), or when you manually initiate a sync (see [Initiating a wireless sync manually](#)).

**TIP** If you sync email with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003, you can synchronize messages in subfolders you create. In the Inbox, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools > Manage Folders**. Folders containing subfolders display a +. Select the + to view the subfolders. Check the box to the left of any subfolder you want to sync.

- If you use ActiveSync desktop software to synchronize your smartphone with your computer, messages in Outlook on your computer are transferred to your smartphone when you connect your computer and your smartphone (see [Connecting your smartphone to your computer](#)).
- For all other types of accounts, including ISP accounts and accounts you access using a VPN server connection (typically a work account),

follow these steps to send and receive messages:

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **E-mail**  (left action key).
- 3 Press **Left**  to cycle through your accounts until the name of the account you want to synchronize appears in the title bar.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Send/Receive** to synchronize your smartphone with your email server.





### Receiving attachments

- 1 Scroll to the attachment name (below the subject) to highlight it and mark it for download.
- 2 Synchronize the email account that contains the message as described in the previous sections.
- 3 Scroll to and select the attachment name (below the subject) to open the attachment.




**DID YOU KNOW?** You can receive and open attachments in a number of different formats, including PDF. PDF file attachments open in Picsel PDF Viewer on your smartphone.

**TIP** To store attachments on an expansion card, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**. Select **Storage** and then check the **Store attachments on a storage card** box.

If you are synchronizing with Outlook on your computer and want to download attachments automatically, do the following:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 4 Select **E-mail**, and then select **Settings**.
- 5 Check the **Include file attachments** box.
- 6 Press **OK** .

To automatically download attachments from an IMAP4 email account (typically an ISP account) or an account that you access using a VPN server connection (typically a work account), do the following:

- 1 Go to your Today screen.
- 2 Press **E-mail**  (left action key).
- 3 Close any open messages.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 5 On the Accounts tab, select the IMAP4 account name.
- 6 Press **Next**  (right action key) until you reach Server information, and then select **Options**.
- 7 Press **Next** twice, and then select **Get full copy of messages** and **When getting full copy, get attachments**.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Embedded images and objects cannot be received as attachments, unless you have an IMAP4 email account with TNEF disabled. Note that TNEF must be enabled to receive meeting requests.

## Working with email messages


---

### Adding an online address book

Many email servers, including servers running Exchange Server, can verify names with an online address book, also called a directory service or a Global Address List. After you create and enable an email account, the Inbox application checks your contacts list and then the directory service to verify names that you enter in the To, Cc, and Bcc fields.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Do the following:

- Ask your system administrator for the name of the directory service and the server, and whether authentication is required for accessing an online address book.
- If your company is using an Exchange Server, you must first synchronize with the Exchange Server to enable the Global Address List to find a Contact.

- 1 In the message list, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 2 Select the **Address** tab.
- 3 Select the address book you want to check for email addresses, and then select **Add**.
- 4 Enter the name of the Directory service.

**TIP** To delete a directory service, highlight it, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **Delete**.
- 5 Enter the server name.
- 6 If your server requires authentication, check the box, and then enter your username and password.
- 7 (Optional) Check the **Check name against this server** box to enable this directory service.
- 8 Select **OK**.



### Using an online address book

You can access contact information, such as an email address or phone number, from your organization's online address book or Global Address List (GAL). To access a

GAL, make sure you are accessing an Exchange Server 2003 upgraded to Service Pack 2. This feature is useful only if you know the exact name as it appears in the directory.



**DID YOU KNOW?** You can use the Global Address List to find a contact. In Contacts, press **Menu** (right action key), and then select **Find Online**. When sending a meeting request, select **Attendees**, press **Menu** (right action key), and then select **Find Online**.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Add an online address book to your smartphone. See [Adding an online address book](#).

- 1 In a new message, tap the **To** box.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key), and select **Add Recipient**.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key), and select **Find Online**.
- 4 Enter the contact name as it appears in the directory and tap **Find**. You must spell the contact name correctly.



**TIP** When you sync with Outlook on your computer, disable your online address books to avoid errors. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**. Select **Address**, select each online address book, and then uncheck the **Check name against this server** box. Be sure to turn this option back on if you synchronize other email accounts.

### Forwarding a message

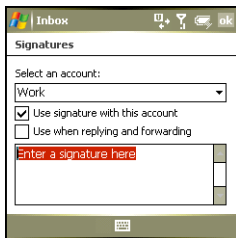
- 1 Open the message you want to forward.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Forward**.
- 3 Address the message and enter any text you want to add.
- 4 Press **Send**  (left action key).


### Adding a signature to your messages

You can use a different signature with each email account.

- 1 Press **E-mail**  (left action key).
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 3 On the Accounts tab, select **Signatures**.



- 4 Select the account for which you want to create a signature.

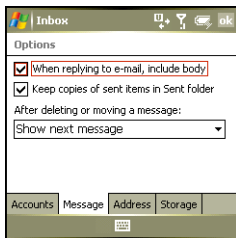



- 5 Check the box to add this signature to new messages you create with this account.
- 6 (Optional) Check the box to add this signature to messages you reply to or forward with this account.
- 7 Select the default signature text and enter the signature text you want to use.
- 8 Press **OK** .

### Customizing your email settings

When you customize settings for an email account, the options you choose apply to that account only.

- 1 Press **E-mail**  (left action key).
- 2 Press **Left**  to cycle through your accounts until the name of the account you want appears in the title bar.



- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 4 Select the **Message** tab and set any of the following options:

**When replying to e-mail, include body:** Indicates whether the body of a message you received appears in your response to that message.

**Keep copies of sent items in Sent folder:** Indicates whether messages you send are stored in the Sent folder.

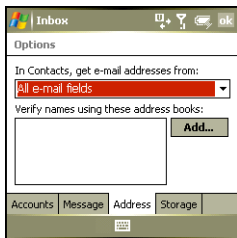
**After deleting or moving a message:**

Specifies what you want to see after you delete or move an email message.

- 5 Select the **Address** tab and set any of the following options:

**In Contacts, get e-mail addresses**

**from:** Indicates whether you want to check Contacts in addition to any directory services for email addresses.

**Verify names using these address**

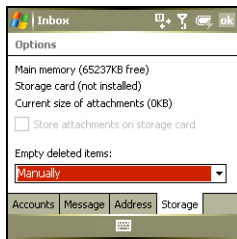
**books:** Indicates which directory services you want to check for email addresses.

**Add:** Enables you to add directory services to the list of online address books.

- 6 Select the **Storage** tab and set any of the following options:

**Store attachments on storage card:**

Indicates whether you want to automatically store email attachments on an expansion card.



**Empty deleted items:** Indicates whether you want to automatically empty the Deleted folder, and when you want this to occur.

- 7 Press **OK** .



## Sending email messages from within another application

---

You can send files such as pictures, videos, and ringtones as attachments to email messages; see [Creating and sending an email message](#) for instructions.

You can send certain files as attachments from within the application where the file is created or stored. For example, if you take a picture with your smartphone's built-in camera, you can select an option to send the picture as an attachment to an email message. This feature can be used with videos and sound files as well. For details, see the chapter on the specific application.





# Your text and multimedia messages

---

If you need to get a short message to a friend or a co-worker fast, send a text message from your smartphone to their mobile phone or email address.

If you need more than text to express yourself, use multimedia messaging to give your message extra impact by adding a photo, video, or sound file.

## Benefits

- Enjoy quick communication
- Use text messaging to chat with friends
- Be as simple or as creative as you want

## In this chapter

---

Using the Messaging application . . . . .	101
Customizing the Messaging application. . . . .	110




## Using the Messaging application

You can use the Messaging application to send and receive brief text messages (SMS) and multimedia messages (MMS). Before you use your smartphone to send or receive messages, consult your network operator for pricing and availability of text and multimedia messaging services.

### Creating and sending a text message


Each text message can have up to 160 characters. You can send a message of more than 160 characters, but the message will automatically be split into several messages. (If you send a text message to an email address, the email address is deducted from the 160-character count.)

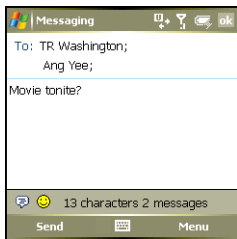
**DID YOU KNOW?** You can send and receive text messages even while you are on a phone call. This is easiest when using a hands-free headset or the speakerphone.


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press **New**  (left action key).
- 3 Enter the recipient's mobile phone number or email address. Here are some shortcuts:
  - If the recipient's name and mobile number are in your Contacts list, type the first few letters of the first or last name or simply enter the first initial, followed by a space, and then the last initial to find a name.
  - Press **Center**  to view a list of recently used addresses, and select the recipient from the list. Select **Add Recipient** to add a recipient from your Contacts list.

**TIP** To address a message to multiple recipients, separate the addresses by pressing **Enter** or entering a semicolon (;). You can send a message to up to 20 addresses.

**TIP** To send a message to a different number for a contact, select the contact in the To field, and then edit the number that appears in the box directly below the contact number. You can also select a number by pressing **Center** on the 5-way, and then edit it.

- 4 Enter your message, or tap  and then select a predefined phrase you want to insert.



- 5 (Optional) Tap  and then select an emoticon to add to your message.

**TIP** You can also access predefined phrases and emoticons by pressing **Menu** (right action key) on the message compose screen.

**TIP** Some symbols can't be used in text messages. Invalid characters are automatically replaced by the Messaging application.

- 6 Press **Send**  (left action key).



## Creating and sending a multimedia message

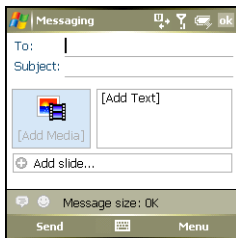
Multimedia messages consist of pictures, videos, text, and sounds presented as one or more slides. You can include any of the following items:

- **Ringtones**
  - MIDI
- **Sound clips**
  - AMR
  - QCELP
- **Pictures**
  - JPEG
  - GIF
  - WBMP
- **Videos**
  - 3GPP
  - 3GPP2
  - MPEG4



Outgoing multimedia messages can be up to 300KB by default, but your network operator may change the maximum message size.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Not all service plans support multimedia messaging. If you're not sure, check with your network operator to confirm that your service plan includes this feature.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (left action key) and select **New MMS**.



- 3 Enter the recipient's mobile phone number or email address. Here are some shortcuts:
  - If the recipient's name and mobile number are in your Contacts list, type the first few letters of the first or last name or simply enter the first initial, followed by a space, and then the last initial to find a name.



- Press **Center**  to view a list of recently used addresses, and select the recipient from the list. Select **Add Recipient** to add a recipient from your Contacts list.
- 4 Select **Subject** and enter a title for the message.
  - 5 Select  and select one of the following:

**Add Picture:** Enables you to insert a picture. You can take a new picture with the built-in camera or insert an existing picture.


**Add Video:** Enables you to insert a video. You can capture a new video with the built-in camera or insert an existing video clip.

**Add Sound:** Enables you to record a message, such as a voice caption for a picture, or insert an existing sound, such as a ringtone. You can add one sound per slide; to send more than one sound in a message, add another slide to your message.

**TIP** You can add both a picture and a sound clip to the same slide in a message. To add a sound to a picture, select the picture thumbnail and select **Add Sound**. To add a picture to a sound, select the sound icon thumbnail and select **Add Picture**.

- 6 (Optional) Select **Add Text** and enter a text caption or message for the slide you inserted. Tap  to insert a predefined phrase. Tap  to insert an emoticon.
- 7 (Optional) Select **Add slide** and repeat steps 5–6 to add another slide in this message.

**DID YOU KNOW?** If you add more than one slide to a message, you can set the length of time each slide is displayed. Press **Menu** (right action key) and then select **Slide Timing**.

- 8 (Optional) To add a vCard (contact file) to a message, press **Menu**  (left action key), select **Add Media**, and then select **Add vCard**.


**TIP** To preview a multimedia message as the recipient will see it, press **Menu** (right action key) and then select **Preview Message**.

- 9 Press **Send**  (left action key).

### Setting message options

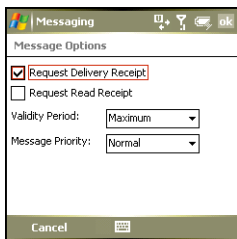
You can set options for individual text and multimedia messages you send.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can set general preferences that apply to all incoming and outgoing messages; see [Customizing message settings](#). If you set options for an individual message, those options override your general preferences for that message only.

- 1 On the message compose screen, press **Menu** .
- 2 Select **Message Options**.



3 Select any of the following options:



#### **Request Delivery/Read Receipt:**

Indicates whether you want to receive confirmation that the message has been delivered or has been read.

**Validity Period:** Indicates how long the message remains available to be sent if the recipient's phone or email address is not available when you originally send the message. For example, if a message contains information that will not be useful to the recipient after an hour, you can set the validity for one hour.

**Message Priority (multimedia messages only):** Indicates the priority for this message.

4 Press **OK** .

### **Receiving text and multimedia messages**

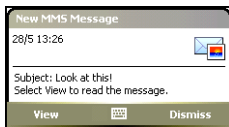
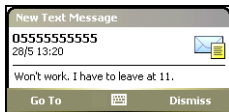
When your phone is on and you are in a wireless coverage area, you automatically receive new text messages. For multimedia messages, you can set your smartphone to automatically download new messages or to notify you that messages are ready to download. You can also set your smartphone to notify you when a new text or multimedia message arrives.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Message notifications include the message text unless you have turned on privacy mode (see [Customizing message settings](#)). If privacy mode is on, the notification states only the type of incoming message.

The new message notification may include any of the following options:

- **Go To:** Opens a text message so you can view its full contents.
- **View:** Opens a multimedia message and plays the included media.


- **Download:** Downloads the full content of a multimedia message.
- **Dismiss:** Closes the notification and puts the message into your Inbox.

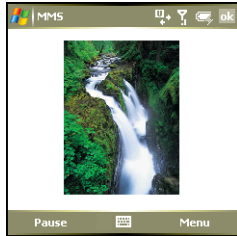


If you have multiple messages, the notification includes the number of messages and the type (text or multimedia).


### Viewing/playing a message


You can open a message from a notification or from the Inbox of the Messaging application. When you open a multimedia message, playback starts automatically.


- 1 Do one of the following to open the message:
  - Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**. From the Inbox, select the message you want to view.
  - From a notification, select **Go To** (for text messages) or **View** (for multimedia messages).





- 2 Do any of the following:
  - **Pause or resume playback (multimedia message only):** Select **Pause**  (left action key). To resume playback, select **Play**  (left action key).


**Save the item that is playing (multimedia message only):** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Save**.


**See a summary of the message, including sender, date, and time:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Message Details**.


**Reply to the message:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Reply** or **Reply All**.

**NOTE** If the message is a single picture with no audio, select **Reply**  (left action key) to reply to the message.

**Forward the message:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Forward**.

**Call the sender:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Call Sender**.

**Add the sender's information to your Contacts list:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Add to Contacts**.

**Save the message as a template for other messages:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Save as Template**.

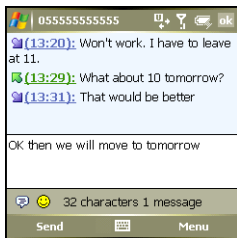
**DID YOU KNOW?** When viewing a message containing multiple slides, you can press **Right** on the 5-way to move to the next slide, or press **Left** on the 5-way to move to the previous slide.

**3** Press **OK** .

## Using Messaging to chat

When you exchange more than one message with a single contact, the messages you exchange with that person are grouped into a chat session. When you select a chat session from your message list, the upper part of the screen displays all messages you've exchanged with this contact, and the lower part provides a text entry area.



**1** Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.



- 2 Do one of the following:

**Start a new chat:** Select a message and reply to it.

**Continue an existing chat:** Select a message with the **Chat**  icon.

- 3 Enter your message.
- 4 Press **Send**  (left action key).
- 5 In a received message, select  to open a media file, or click a link to download and open a new multimedia message.

**TIP** Only the last 50 messages in a chat session are displayed. Select **View older messages** near the top of the screen to see earlier messages.

## Using links in messages

When you receive a text message that contains a telephone number, email address, or URL, you can dial the number, send an email message, or go to the web page immediately. Your smartphone automatically opens the appropriate application from the link.

- 1 Open a message in the Inbox or another folder.
- 2 Select the phone number, email address, or URL (appears as underlined blue text).

## Message status icons

The status icons that appear next to each message in the Inbox, Outbox, and Sent folders indicate the following:



An unread text message.



An unread message with pictures or videos.



An unread message with sound.



A read text message.



A read message with pictures or videos.



A read message with sound.



A message that was delivered with delivery confirmation turned on (Sent folder only).



Multiple messages exchanged with a single recipient (chat).




An urgent message. This icon appears below the message size on the right side of the screen.


**TIP** Unread messages appear in bold. Messages you've read appear in plain text.

## Sorting your messages


You can sort the messages in any folder by date or by sender.

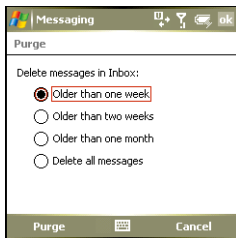
- 1 Go to the Inbox or other folder you want to sort.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Sort**.
- 3 Select **By Name** or **By Date**.

## Deleting a single message

- 1 Go to the Inbox or other folder containing the message you want to delete.
- 2 Highlight the message.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Delete**.
- 4 Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

## Deleting multiple messages



- 1 Go to the Inbox or other folder containing the messages you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Purge**.
- 3 Select the age of messages to be deleted, or select to delete all messages.

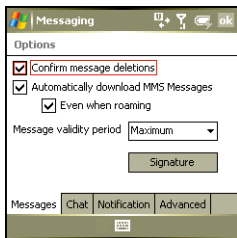


- 4 Select **Purge**  (left action key).

## Customizing the Messaging application

### Customizing message settings

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 On the Messages tab, set any of the following options:




**Confirm message deletions:** Indicates whether you want deletion confirmation messages to appear.

**Automatically download MMS messages:** Indicates whether you want to automatically receive multimedia messages. Check the **Even when roaming** box to download multimedia messages both on your home network and while roaming.

**NOTE** You might incur additional charges if you download multimedia messages while roaming.



**Message validity period:** Indicates how long messages remain available to be sent if the recipient's phone or email address is not available when you originally send the message. For example, if your messages generally contain information that will not be useful to recipients after an hour, you can set the validity for one hour.

**Signature:** Enables you to add a signature to outgoing messages. Select the button; then, on the Signature screen, check the **Use signatures with new messages** box, enter your signature text, and press **OK** .


- 4 Press **OK** .

**DID YOU KNOW?** Options you select for an individual message (see [Setting message options](#)) override the general preferences you set for messages.



### Customizing chat settings

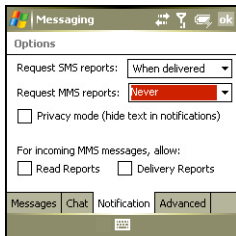
- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 Select the **Chat** tab.



- 4 Select either of the following options:
  - Create chat from messages:** Indicates the conditions under which a chat session starts.
  - Show time stamps of each message:** Indicates whether you want chat session items to display a date and time indicator.
- 5 Press **OK** .

### Customizing notification settings

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 Select the **Notification** tab.



- 4 Select any of the following options:

**Request SMS/MMS receipts:**

Indicates whether you want to receive a confirmation when a message is delivered or (for multimedia messages only) when it is read.

**Privacy mode:** Indicates whether you want only the message type displayed on a notification for a single incoming message. If the box is unchecked, the notification displays the text of the message.

**Allow Read Reports/Delivery**



**Reports:** Indicates whether you want a confirmation sent to the sender when you read a multimedia message or a message is delivered.

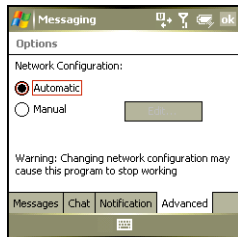
- 5 Press **OK** .

**Customizing network settings**

**IMPORTANT** Changing the network settings can cause the Messaging application to stop working correctly. We

recommend that you keep the default network settings.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Messaging**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 Select the **Advanced** tab.



- 4 Select **Manual**, and then select **Edit**.
- 5 Edit the network settings you want to change.

**TIP** Select **Automatic** on the Advanced tab to restore the default settings.

- 6 Press **OK**  twice.





# Your connections to the web and wireless devices

---

You use the web for so many things: finding driving directions, getting news, buying gifts, checking web-based email. Now, with your network operator's network and the built-in web browser, you can take the web with you almost anywhere you go.

Your smartphone's built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology helps you easily set up wireless connections to a number of devices, so you can enjoy the convenience of cable-free connectivity. You can also use your smartphone to connect your computer to the Internet and to share contacts or your favorite photos with other people.

## Benefits

- Carry the web with you
- Store web pages for offline viewing
- Connect to Bluetooth headsets and car kits
- Connect your computer to the Internet through your smartphone

## In this chapter

---

Browsing the web . . . . .	143
Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology. . . . .	149
Using your device as a wireless modem . . . . .	153

## Browsing the web

Internet Explorer Mobile provides quick and easy access to web pages. You can view most sites you use on your computer, including those with security and advanced features, such as JavaScript and frames.

Internet Explorer Mobile supports JavaScript, Secure Sockets Layer (SSL), and cookies, but does not support plug-ins (Flash, Shockwave, and so on) or Java applets.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The security certificates and 128-bit SSL strong encryption enables you to browse secure sites, such as online shopping, banking, and email. Remember, some secure sites also require a specific browser and may not work with Internet Explorer Mobile. Ask the organization for an alternate access point that is compatible with Internet Explorer Mobile.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Do the following:

- Be sure to subscribe to data services from your network operator. This is necessary for browsing the web.

- Make sure your phone is on (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)).


### Viewing a web page

By default, Internet Explorer Mobile scales web page content to fit your smartphone screen so that you can view most of the information without scrolling left or right.


**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also start a web search from your Today screen by selecting the Web search field, entering the item you want to find, and then pressing Center on the 5-way.



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Internet Explorer**.

- 2 Highlight the address line, enter the address of the web page you want to view, and then press **Center** . To return to a recently viewed page, select the address line list, and then select the web address.


**DID YOU KNOW?** If you browse to a secure web page, the Lock icon in the address line appears closed instead of open.

- 3 Press **Menu** , select **View**, and then select one of the following:













**One Column:** Arranges web pages into one column that is as wide as the screen, so that you don't have to scroll horizontally.

**Default:** Maintains a layout similar to what you see on a desktop computer, but it makes items smaller and arranges the content so that you can see most of it without scrolling horizontally.











**Desktop:** Keeps the same layout and size as on a desktop computer, which requires both horizontal and vertical scrolling.

**Full Screen:** Hides the status and navigation areas and fills the entire screen with the web page. To exit full screen mode, press  (right action key), or tap and hold anywhere on the screen and uncheck **Full Screen**.

**Show Pictures:** Shows or hides pictures on web pages. Hiding pictures speeds up the time it takes to load pages.

- 4 Here are some tips on viewing web pages and moving around in them:
  - To view the previous page, press **Back**  (left action key) or **Backspace** .
  - To refresh the page with the latest content from the Internet, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Refresh**.
  - To scroll through the page in One Column View or Default View, press **Up**  or **Down** . In Desktop View, press **Up** , **Down** , **Left** , or **Right**  to scroll in all directions.
  - To follow a link to another web page, press **Up**  or **Down**  to highlight the link, and then press **Center**  to

go to the selected page. You can also tap the link on the screen with your stylus.

- To send email from a web page, select the address link. You need to configure an email application on your smartphone before you can use this feature. See [Your email](#).
  - To adjust the size of the text on web pages, press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Zoom**, and then select the size you want.
  - To view a web page's properties, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > Properties**.
  - To view each item in a list, select the list and scroll using **Up**  or **Down** .
  - In a list, press **Left**  or **Right**  to cycle between items, and press **Center**  to accept the change.
  - In a form, such as a browser search field, press **Center**  to interact with the form, and then press **Center**  to stop interacting with the form.
- 5 Press **OK**  to close Internet Explorer Mobile.

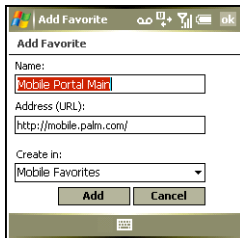
**TIP** To send a link, press **Menu** and select **Tools > Send Link via E-mail**. Select the Messaging account you want to use to send the link.





## Creating a favorite

Favorites let you bookmark a web page so that you can instantly access it without entering the web address.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Create the folders where you want to store your favorites first. Once you create a favorite, you can't move it to another folder.



- 1 Go to the page you want to mark as a favorite.



- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Add to Favorites**.
  - 3 (Optional) Select **Name** and enter a different description.
  - 4 (Optional) Select the folder where you want to create the favorite.
  - 5 Select **Add**.
- 1 Press **Start**  and select Internet Explorer.
  - 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select Favorites.
  - 3 Select the **Add/Delete** tab.
  - 4 Select **New Folder**.
  - 5 Enter a name for this folder, and then select **Add**.
  - 6 Press **OK** .

**TIP** To delete a favorite or folder, press **Menu** and select **Favorites**. Select the **Add/Delete** tab, highlight the item you want to delete, and then select **Delete**. Select **Yes** to confirm deletion, and then press **OK**.

### Viewing a favorite

- 1 Press **Start**  and select Internet Explorer.
- 2 Press **Favorites**  (left action key).
- 3 Select the page you want to view in the list.




### Organizing your favorites


You can create folders to organize your favorites. For example, you can store travel links in one folder, stock links in another, and business links in a third folder.

### Downloading files and images from a web page

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can select the Downloads favorite to access the network operator downloads page.

You can download files that are usable on your smartphone, such as new applications, MIDI ringtones, or pictures that are specifically tagged for download.

- 1 Go to the page that contains the link to the file you want to download.
- 2 Press **Left**  or **Right**  to highlight the link to the file.
- 3 Press and hold **Center** , and then select **Save As** to download a file, or



- tap and hold, and then select **Save Image** to download an image.
- 4 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the file.
  - 5 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder where you want to save the file.
  - 6 Select the **Location** list, and then select where you want to store the file: **Main memory** or **Storage card**.
  - 7 Press **OK** .

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can access specially formatted streaming content by pressing **Menu** (right action key), selecting **Favorites**, and then selecting **WindowsMedia.com**.

## Copying text from a web page

**TIP** You can copy the text from the entire web page. Tap and hold on the page, and tap **Select All Text**. Tap and hold on the page again, and tap **Copy**.


You can copy text from a web page and paste it in other applications.

- 1 Use the stylus to highlight the text you want to copy.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Copy**.
- 3 Go to the application in which you want to paste, and then position the cursor where you want to paste the text.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Paste**.

**TIP** If Internet Explorer Mobile does not recognize a smartphone number as dialable, you can copy the phone number (as text) and paste it into the Phone Dial Pad.

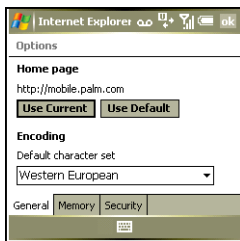
## Returning to recently viewed pages

The History list stores the addresses of the pages you visited recently.

- 1 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **History**.
- 2 (Optional) Select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select how you want to sort the History list.
- 3 Select the web page you want to view.

## Customizing your Internet Explorer Mobile settings

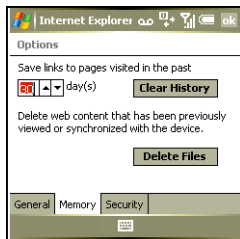
- 1 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Tools > Options**.
- 2 On the General tab, set any of the following options:



**Home Page:** Sets the page that appears when you open Internet Explorer Mobile. To use the page you were on when you opened the menu, select **Use Current**. To select the original home page, select **Use Default**.

**Encoding:** Sets the character set for the web pages you view.

- 3 Select the **Memory** tab and set any of the following options:



**Save links to pages visited in the past:** Sets how many days of activity the History list stores.

**Clear History:** Empties the History list.

**Delete Files:** Removes web files that you synchronized with your computer.

- 4 Select the **Security** tab and set any of the following options:

**Allow cookies:** Sets whether your smartphone accepts cookies (small files containing info about your identity and preferences). The page sends the file and stores it on your smartphone.



## Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology



**Clear Cookies:** Deletes any cookies stored on your smartphone.

**Warn when changing to a page that is not secure:** Sets whether a message appears when you switch from a secure page to one that is not secure.

**Warn when page content is blocked due to security settings:** Sets whether a message appears when you attempt to open a page that does not meet your smartphone's security standards.

- 5 Press **OK** .


With your smartphone's built-in Bluetooth® wireless technology, you can connect to a number of Bluetooth devices such as a headset or hands-free car kit, as well as to other phones, handhelds, or piconets. When you connect to another device, you create a partnership (also referred to by terms such as *trusted pair*, *trusted device*, or *pairing*) with that device. If your computer is enabled with Bluetooth wireless technology, you can also synchronize wirelessly or use your phone as a wireless modem.

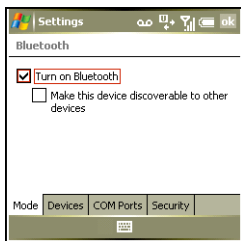
You can create a list of Bluetooth devices that you trust to communicate with your smartphone. When communicating with trusted devices, your smartphone skips the discovery process and creates a secure link as long as the device is within range. Bluetooth range is up to 10 meters (30

feet) in ideal conditions. Performance and range are affected by physical obstacles, radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.

When you configure a headset (see [Connecting to a Bluetooth® hands-free device](#)), the headset is automatically added to your trusted device list. Follow the steps in this section to add other devices to your trusted device list, such as your computer.

### Entering basic Bluetooth settings

- 1 Go to your Today screen, and then tap **Bluetooth** .



- 2 Check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box to turn on your smartphone's Bluetooth feature.

- 3 Check or uncheck the **Make the device discoverable to other devices** box.
- 4 When this box is checked, this enables Bluetooth devices that are not on your Trusted Device list to request a connection with your device. Your device remains accessible to other devices until you uncheck the box.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The Bluetooth icon on your Today screen indicates the status of your smartphone's Bluetooth feature:

Gray = Bluetooth off.

Blue = Bluetooth on.

White = Connected to a Bluetooth device.

Headset = Call in progress with a Bluetooth headset or car kit.

### Requesting a connection with another Bluetooth device

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** To prepare your smartphone to be able to accept a connection from a requesting device, enter the basic Bluetooth settings as described in [Entering basic Bluetooth settings](#).

**KEY TERM Partnership** Two devices—for example, your smartphone and a hands-free device—that can connect because each device finds the same passkey on the other device. Once you form a partnership with a device, you don't need to enter a passkey to connect with that device again. Partnership is also known as paired relationship, pairing, trusted device, and trusted pair.






**IMPORTANT** Some devices have a predefined passkey; if so, you can find the passkey in the documentation for that device. Other devices provide a screen where you enter a passkey that you make up. In either case, you must use the same passkey on both your smartphone and the other device. We recommend that where possible, you make up a passkey of 16 alphanumeric characters (letters and numerals only) to improve the security of your smartphone. The longer the passkey, the more difficult it is for the passkey to be deciphered.

- 1 Go to your Today screen, and then tap Bluetooth .

- 2 Check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box to turn on your smartphone's Bluetooth feature.
- 3 Select the **Devices** tab, and then select **New Partnership**.



- 4 Wait for your smartphone to search for devices and to display the device list.

- 5 Select the device you want to connect with, and then press **Next**  (right action key).
- 6 Enter an alphanumeric passkey between 1 and 16 characters long, and then press **Next**  (right action key).
- 7 If the passkey is not built-in, enter the same passkey on the smartphone and the other Bluetooth device, and then press **Finish**  (right action key)
- 8 If you're connecting to a headset or hands-free car kit, check the **Hands Free** box, and then press **Finish**  (right action key).
- 9 Press **OK** .


You can now communicate with this device whenever it is within range and your smartphone's Bluetooth feature is turned on. The range varies greatly depending on environmental factors; maximum is about 10 meters or 30 feet.

**TIP** To delete the established partnership with a device, go to the Bluetooth Settings screen and select **Devices**. Highlight the connection you want to remove, press and hold **Center** on the 5-way, and then select **Delete**. The deleted device can no longer automatically connect with your smartphone.

### Accepting a connection from another Bluetooth device

**TIP** Check your battery level before establishing a Bluetooth connection. If the battery level is low, you can't make a Bluetooth connection.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** To prepare your smartphone to be able to accept a connection from a requesting device, enter the basic Bluetooth settings as described in [Entering basic Bluetooth settings](#).

- 1 Go to your Today screen, and then tap **Bluetooth** .
- 2 Check the **Turn on Bluetooth** box to turn on your smartphone's Bluetooth feature.

- 3 If you have already set up a partnership with the transmitting device, your smartphone is ready to receive the info.

If you haven't set up a connection, check the **Make this device discoverable to other devices** box to let the device find your smartphone and request a connection. Enter the same passkey on your smartphone and on the Bluetooth device.

- 4 When your smartphone is receiving info, a notification tells you that a transmission is in progress. To stop the transmission, press **Cancel** (left action key); to close the notification, press **Dismiss** (right action key).

## Using your device as a wireless modem

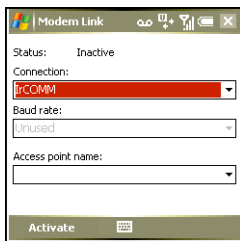
Dial-up networking (DUN) is the feature that converts your smartphone into a modem so that you can access the Internet from your computer.

You can set up DUN in one of two ways:

- You can use ModemLink (USB).
- If your computer is enabled with Bluetooth wireless technology, you can set up your device as a wireless modem using the built-in Bluetooth technology.

### Setting up Modem Link for a USB connection

- 1 Press **Start** and select **Programs**.



- 2 Select **Modem Link**.
- 3 Select the **Connection** list and select **USB**.
- 4 Press **Activate** (left action key) and follow the wizard to set up Modem Link.

For more information on creating and using a USB DUN connection, visit [www.palm.com/treo750v-support](http://www.palm.com/treo750v-support).

### Creating a DUN connection using Bluetooth technology

To configure DUN using Bluetooth technology, complete the following procedures:

- Create a partnership between your device and your computer as described in [Requesting a connection with another Bluetooth device](#).
- [Setting up your computer for a Bluetooth DUN connection](#)
- [Accessing the Internet using a Bluetooth DUN connection](#)

### Setting up your computer for a Bluetooth DUN connection

Dial-up networking must be enabled or installed on your computer. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer of your Bluetooth adapter to enable DUN. Your wireless service provider may provide customized software programs that walk you through the DUN setup process. Check

with your wireless service provider to see if such a program is available.

### Accessing the Internet using a Bluetooth DUN connection

The steps for accessing the Internet on your computer may vary depending on your operating system and how Bluetooth wireless technology is set up on your computer—for example, if it is built in versus if you are using a wireless Bluetooth adapter. If the following procedure does not work with your computer, check your computer's documentation for how to set up Bluetooth technology to access the Internet using a DUN connection.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** You may need to use a virtual private network (VPN) to access corporate email. Check with your system administrator for more information.

- 1 Open the Bluetooth screen on your computer and look for the option for paired devices. Check your computer's documentation for how to open this screen and for the name of the paired devices option.

- 2 Double-click the icon or option representing your smartphone. Your computer connects to your smartphone and shows that DUN services are available.
- 3 Double-click the **DUN** icon.
- 4 Enter the following in the **Dial** field: **\*99#** or **\*99\*\*\*1#**. You do not need to enter anything in the User Name or Password field.
- 5 Click **Dial**. Once the connection is successfully established, you can browse the Internet on your computer or download your email.
- 6 You may be asked if you want to remember this dial text for this

connection. We recommend that you choose to remember the dial text to avoid errors and the inconvenience of entering it for every session.

- 7 To verify that you are connected, look for a network connection icon in the taskbar at the bottom of your computer screen. To check the status of the connection, right-click the **Bluetooth network** icon.

### Terminating a DUN Internet session

To terminate the DUN connection, right-click the icon or option representing your smartphone on your computer, and then click **Disconnect**.







# Your photos, videos, and music

---

Do you have a wallet bulging with photos of friends, family, pets, and your most recent vacation?

Are you tired of carrying both your MP3 player and your phone?

Your smartphone solves both problems. You can keep your favorite photos right on your smartphone—videos, too. And there's no need to carry an expensive MP3 player; you can play music on your smartphone. Simply transfer songs onto your smartphone or an expansion card and then listen through your stereo headphones.

## Benefits

- Never be far from your favorite people, places, and songs
- No separate photo viewer, MP3, CD, or mini-disc player required
- Arrange your photos, videos, and songs

## In this chapter

---

Camera . . . . .	131
Pictures & Videos . . . . .	136
Windows Media Player Mobile . . . . .	140

## Camera

Your Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphone comes with an easy-to-use, built-in, 1.3-megapixel camera with 2x digital zoom. You can use the camera to take and view pictures and videos and send them to your friends and family. To add a personal touch to your smartphone, use your pictures as your Today screen background, and as caller ID images, or use your videos to create video ringtones.



You can receive and view pictures and videos, and send pictures and videos as attachments or multimedia messages; see [Pictures & Videos](#). You can also personalize your smartphone by using a picture as a background or by adding a picture to a contact; see [Adding a contact](#) for details. You can also move pictures and videos to a computer by synchronizing your smartphone with your computer.

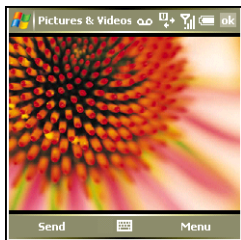
### Taking a picture

By default, pictures are stored in the My Pictures folder on your smartphone. If you want to store your pictures on an

expansion card, see [Customizing your Camera settings](#) to change where pictures are stored. For information on accessing your pictures on your computer, see [Viewing pictures and videos on your computer](#).

Pictures are captured and stored in 16-bit color, JPG format. Resolution settings range from 1280 x 1024 to 160 x 120 pixels; 1.3-megapixels to QQVGA (160 x 120 pixels). You can change the default setting. See [Customizing your Camera settings](#) for details.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select the **Camera**  icon.




- 2 Adjust the position of your smartphone until you see the subject you want to photograph on the screen. Your




smartphone has a self-portrait mirror next to the camera lens on the back of your smartphone. Use the mirror when you're taking a picture and you want to be in the picture too.


- 3 (Optional) Adjust any of the following:

**Zoom:** Press **Up** ▲, to zoom in or **Down** ▼ to zoom out.

**Brightness:** Press **Right** ► to increase the brightness or **Left** ◀ to decrease the brightness.

**Resolution:** Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Resolution** to change the image quality.





- 4 (Optional) Set a five-second timer: Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Mode**, and then select **Timer**.
- 5 Press **Center**  to capture the picture or start the timer.
- 6 Hold your smartphone still until the picture renders, and then do one of the following:
- Press **Camera**  (left action key) to take another picture.

- Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnails View.

**DID YOU KNOW?** After three minutes of inactivity when previewing an image, the camera goes into standby mode. Press any key or tap the screen to return to the image preview. If the camera goes to standby while the recording is paused, the recording is stopped and the video clip is saved.

### Taking pictures in burst mode

Burst mode takes five pictures in quick succession, with one button press.



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Press **Camera**  (left action key).
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Mode > Burst**.
- 4 Press **Center** .



### Recording a video


Videos can be any length, provided you have enough storage space available. By default, videos are stored in the My Pictures folder on your smartphone. If you want to store your videos on an expansion







card, see [Customizing your Camera settings](#) to change where videos are stored. For information on accessing your videos on your computer, see [Viewing pictures and videos on your computer](#).

**TIP** If you see a camcorder icon below the preview image, video mode is on. To turn on the still camera, press **Menu** and select **Still Mode**.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Select **Camera** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Video Mode**.
- 4 Adjust the position of your smartphone until you see the subject you want to record on the screen. Your smartphone has a self-portrait mirror next to the camera lens on the back of your smartphone. Use the mirror when you're taking a picture video and you want to be in the picture too.

- 5 (Optional) Adjust any of the following:
  - Brightness:** Press **Right**  to increase the brightness or **Left**  to decrease the brightness.

**Resolution:** Press **Menu**  and select **Quality** to change the video resolution.

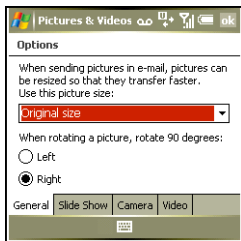
- 6 Press **Center**  to start recording.
- 7 When you're finished recording, press **Stop**  (left action key) or **Center**  to stop recording.
- 8 (Optional) To review the video in Windows Media Player Mobile, press **Thumbnails**  (left action key), highlight the video, and then press **Center** . Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

**TIP** If you don't like a video you recorded, delete it. See [Deleting a picture or video](#) for details.

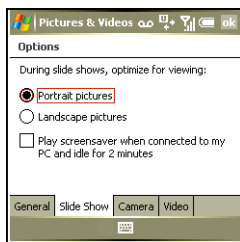
### Customizing your Camera settings

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.

- 2 Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Options**.



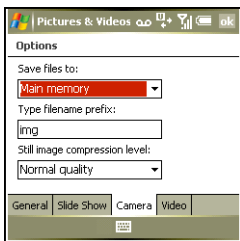
- 3 On the General tab, set any of the following options:
- Use this picture size:** Sets the size of pictures you send with the Messaging application.
- When rotating a picture, rotate 90 degrees:** Sets the direction in which pictures rotate.
- 4 Select the **Slide Show** tab and set any of the following options:
- During slide shows, optimize for viewing:** Sets whether pictures are optimized for portrait or landscape format during slide shows.



**Play screensaver when connected to my PC and idle for 2 minutes:**

Sets whether the pictures in your My Pictures folder are used as a screensaver when your smartphone is connected to your computer and ActiveSync® desktop software is not running.

- 5 Select the **Camera** tab and set any of the following options:



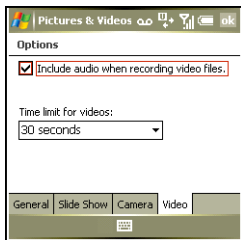
**Save files to:** Specifies whether pictures and videos are stored on your smartphone or on an expansion card.

**Type filename prefix:** Assigns a name to a series of pictures to be captured, such as Seattle001, Seattle002, and so on.

**Still image compression level:** Sets the default size for newly captured pictures.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Videos are captured and stored in 3GP format. Video resolution settings range from 352 x 288 to 176 x 144 pixels.

- 6 Select the **Video** tab and set any of the following options:



**Include audio when recording video files:** Turns the microphone on and off so that you can record videos with or without sound.

**Time limit for videos:** Limits the length of videos you record. You can also select the No limit option.



- 7 Press **OK**  to return to the Thumbnail View.

## Pictures & Videos

### Viewing a picture

In addition to viewing the pictures you capture with the built-in camera, you can view pictures captured on many popular digital cameras or downloaded from the Internet. Your smartphone supports the following picture formats:

- JPG
- PNG
- BMP
- GIF



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Select the picture you want to view.
- 3 Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

### Viewing a video

In addition to viewing the videos you capture with the built-in camera, you can view videos captured on many popular digital cameras streamed from websites.



Your smartphone supports and streams the following types of video files:

- MPEG-4
- 3GPP2
- 3GPP
- WMV, WMA, ASF
- RTSP
- SDP Streaming








- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Select the video you want to view. For more info on viewing videos, see [Playing media files on your smartphone](#).
- 3 Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

**TIP** To view pictures or videos in a different folder, select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the album you want to view.

### Viewing a slide show

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Play Slide Show**. The slide show plays automatically.





- 3 Press **Center**  to display the slide show toolbar, which you can use to **Rotate** , **Play** , **Pause** , **Reverse** , **Forward** , and **Stop**  the slide show.

### Sending a picture or video



You can send a picture or video to other picture-enabled mobile smartphones or to an email address as an attachment.

You cannot send copyrighted pictures or videos that appear with a Lock icon in Thumbnail View.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Highlight the picture or video you want to send.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Send**.
- 4 Select the email or MMS account you want to use to send the picture or video.
- 5 When the Messaging application opens, address and send the message. (See [Creating and sending a multimedia message](#) for details.)



### Creating a video ringtone



You can save a video that you record as a ringtone.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Highlight the video you want to use as a ringtone.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Save to Contact Ring Tone**.
- 4 Select the contact to whom you want to assign the ringtone.


### Organizing pictures and videos

You can move or copy pictures and videos to other folders or between your smartphone and an expansion card.


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Highlight the picture or video you want to move or copy.
- 3 Do one of the following:
  - To move the picture or video to another location, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Cut**.



- To keep the picture or video in two locations, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Copy**.
- 4 Select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and select the location where you want to place the picture or video you selected in step 3.
  - 5 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Paste**.

You can also view a specific folder or expansion card and arrange the pictures and videos by name, date, or size.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the folder you want to view.
- 3 Select the **Sort By** list in the upper-right, and then select the sort method: **Name**, **Date**, or **Size**.




### Using a picture as the Today screen background

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Highlight the picture you want to use.


- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Set as Today Background**.
- 4 Select the **Transparency level** list and select the appropriate level. Use a higher percentage for a more transparent picture and a lower percentage for a more opaque picture.
- 5 Press **OK**  to return to Thumbnail View.

### Editing a picture



For more extensive edits, just download your picture or video to your computer and edit it in your favorite graphics program. Then sync the picture or video back on your smartphone.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Highlight the picture you want to edit.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit**.
- 4 Do any of the following:
  - To rotate a picture 90 degrees counterclockwise, select **Rotate**.
  - To crop a picture, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Crop**. Tap

and drag the stylus to highlight the area to crop. Tap outside the box to stop cropping.

- To adjust the brightness and contrast levels of a picture, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **AutoCorrect**.
- To undo an edit, press **Menu** and select **Undo**.
- To cancel all unsaved edits you made to the picture, select **Revert to Saved**.

### Deleting a picture or video

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Pictures & Videos**.
- 2 Highlight the picture or video you want to delete.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Delete**.
- 4 Select **Yes**.

### Viewing pictures and videos on your computer

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** You must install ActiveSync® desktop software from the Windows Getting Started Disc (see

[Installing the desktop synchronization software](#)) and select the option to synchronize media (see [Changing which applications sync](#)).

When you synchronize your smartphone, your pictures and videos are copied to your desktop computer. You can view the pictures and videos, and you can also send them to friends using your desktop email application.

To find all synchronized pictures and videos, look in C:\Documents and Settings\<<Username>\My Documents\Treo My Documents.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also download animated GIF files and view them in Internet Explorer Mobile.

**IMPORTANT** You must have QuickTime Player version 6.5 or later installed on your computer to play videos recorded by your smartphone. You can download the videos from an expansion card or you can click the video thumbnail after synchronizing the files.

## Windows Media Player Mobile

---

Windows Media Player Mobile can play music, audio, and video files that are stored on your smartphone or on an expansion card (sold separately) in any of the following file formats:

- WMA
- WMV
- MP3
- 3GP

You can listen to these music, audio, and video files through the speaker on the back of your smartphone or through stereo headphones.

**TIP** For tips on using the desktop version of Windows Media Player, go to the Help menu in Windows Media Player on your computer.

### Transferring media files to your smartphone

Use the Sync feature in the desktop version of Windows Media Player 10 to transfer digital music, audio, video, and playlist files from your computer to an expansion card or your smartphone. Using Sync ensures that the files are transferred correctly.



**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Do the following:

- Be sure you have Windows Media Player 10 or later installed on your computer. Windows Media Player 10 must be installed on your computer before you install the ActiveSync desktop software. See [My video and music files won't sync](#).
  - To sync media files with your computer, set the Media sync option on your smartphone. See [Setting synchronization options](#).
- 1 On your computer, open Windows Media Player 10.
  - 2 (Optional) Insert a 32MB or larger expansion card into your smartphone.
  - 3 Connect your smartphone to your computer with the USB sync cable.

- 4 When the Device Setup Wizard opens on your computer, click **Automatic**.
- 5 Check the **Customize the playlists that will be synchronized** box.
- 6 Select the playlists you want to sync.
- 7 Click **Finish** to begin the transfer. The next time you connect your smartphone to your computer while the desktop version of Windows Media Player 10 is running, synchronization starts automatically. Be patient; transferring media files to an expansion card can take several minutes.



**DID YOU KNOW?** If you close the Windows Media Player Mobile window, your music continues to play in the background.

### Playing media files on your smartphone

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Windows Media**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Library**.

- 3 Select the **Library** list in the upper-left, and then select the library you want to use. If you can't find a media file on your expansion card, update the library (see [Working with libraries](#)).

**TIP** To play a file that is not in a library, go to the Library screen, press **Menu**, and select **Open File**.

- 4 Select the item you want to play (such as a song, album, or artist name).
- 5 Press **Play**  (left action key). See the next page for playback controls.
- 6 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select any of the following during playback:

**Library:** Displays the Library screen so you can select a different song to play.










**Shuffle/Repeat > Shuffle:** Plays the Now Playing playlist in random order. A check appears next to this command when it is on.


**TIP** To repeat the current song, press **Menu** and select **Repeat Song**.


**Shuffle/Repeat > Repeat:** Plays the Now Playing playlist repeatedly. A check appears next to this command when it is on.

**Stop:** Ends playback.

Use any of the following onscreen controls during playback:

- ▶ or **Center**  plays the current file.
- || or **Center**  pauses the current file.
- ⏮ or **Left**  skips to the beginning of the current file or to the previous file.
- ▶ or **Right**  skips to the next file.
-  sets the point from which playback begins. Tap and drag the slider to change the current position.
-  or **Volume button** increases the volume level.
-  or **Volume button** decreases the volume level.
-  turns the sound on or off.
-  displays a video using the full screen.

 displays a website where you can find music and videos to play.




 indicates the rating of the current file. Select the star to change the rating.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can play streaming files from the web. To play a MMS (Microsoft Media Streaming) file, press **Menu** on the Library screen, and then select **Open URL**. Select **URL** and enter the website address, or select **History** and select a site you've visited before. To play a RTSP or SDP streaming file, using the Streaming Media application. Press **Start**, select **Programs**, and then select **Streaming Media**. Select **Connect** and add the URL.

## Working with libraries

A library represents each of the storage locations available to Windows Media Player Mobile, so you should have two libraries: My Device and My Storage Card. Each library contains links to the media files in that location. Windows Media Player Mobile usually updates the My Device library automatically, but you must manually update the My Storage Card library.

**TIP** If you don't see a media file that you added, manually update the library.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Windows Media**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Library**.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Update Library**.
- 4 Wait for the files to be added, and then select **Done**.

**TIP** To delete an item from a library: Highlight the item and then press and hold *Center* on the 5-way to open the shortcut menu. Then select **Delete** from Library. Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

## Working with playlists



A playlist is a list of media files that play in a specific order. You can use playlists to group audio files together or video files together for convenient playback. For example, in the desktop Player, you can create a playlist of upbeat songs for when you exercise and a playlist of soothing

songs for a long flight. When you synchronize, your favorite playlists are automatically copied to your smartphone. Your playlists appear in your libraries (in the My Playlists category).






A temporary playlist, called Now Playing, appears on the Now Playing menu. It lists the currently playing file, as well as any files that are queued up to play next. You can add to, modify, or clear the files on the Now Playing playlist.

- 1 Go to the Now Playing screen:
  - If you are on the Library screen, select the **Now Playing** category.
  - If you are on the Playback screen, select **Now Playing**.
- 2 Do any of the following:



- To move a file up or down one slot, highlight the file, and then select **Move Up**  or **Move Down** .



**TIP** You can also move a file in the Now Playing playlist by tapping and dragging it to a new position.

- To add a file, select **Add** , press **Menu**  (right action key), and then select **Queue Up**.
- To delete a file from the playlist, highlight the file, and then select **Remove** .
- To view more info about a file, highlight the file and select **Properties** .
- To remove all items from the Now Playing playlist, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Clear Now Playing**.

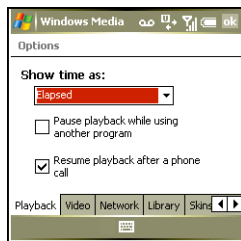
**DID YOU KNOW?** If you move files between your smartphone and an expansion card, be sure to update your libraries, or you won't be able to see the files in their new location.

## Customizing Windows Media Player Mobile

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also customize your smartphone so that pressing and holding the Side button on the side of your smartphone opens Windows Media Player Mobile. See [Reassigning buttons](#) for details.

- 1 If necessary, go to the Playback screen by pressing **OK**  to close the current screen.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 On the **Playback** tab, set any of the following options:

**Show time as:** Sets whether the time remaining or time elapsed appears in the Playback screen.





**Pause playback while using another program:**

Sets whether playback continues if you switch to another application.

**Resume playback after a phone call:**

Sets whether playback continues after you finish a phone call.

- 4 Select the **Video** tab and set any of the following options:

**Play video in full screen:** Sets whether videos automatically play in full screen format.

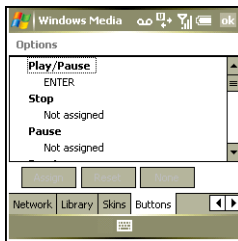
**Scale to fit window:** Sets whether videos are automatically scaled to fit the Playback screen.

- 5 Select the **Network** tab and set the following options:

**Protocol:** Enables and disables the available protocols. You must select at least one protocol. You can also set a UDP Port.

**Internet Connection Speed:** Specifies the speed of your network connection, and specifies whether you want the device to detect connection speed.

- 6 Select the **Library** tab and set whether you want to see the Library or Playback screen when you open Windows Media Player Mobile.
- 7 Select the **Skins** tab and select **Previous** or **Next** to set the player's background.
- 8 Select the **Buttons** tab to change any of the available button settings:



- To assign a button, highlight the item you want to set, select **Assign**, and then press the button you want to use for that item.
  - To restore an item's factory setting, highlight the item and select **Reset**.
  - To unassign an item, highlight the item and select **None**.
- 9 Press **OK** (OK).





# Your personal information organizer

---

Say good-bye to paper calendars and throw away those scribbled to-do lists. Your smartphone is all you need to organize your personal information and keep it with you wherever you go.

You never lose your information, even if your battery is completely drained. All your personal information is backed up each time you synchronize, and your information is kept private when you use your smartphone's security features. Also, you can easily share info with others electronically.

## Benefits

- Track current, future, and past appointments
- Set reminders for appointments, birthdays, important tasks, and more
- Make to-do lists that get done


## In this chapter

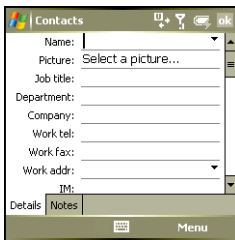
---

Contacts . . . . .	149
Calendar . . . . .	151
Tasks . . . . .	157
Notes . . . . .	159


# Contacts

## Adding a contact

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Contacts**.




**TIP** Take some time to scroll down through all the fields in a new contact. There are fields for multiple addresses, phone numbers, email addresses, and much more.

- 2 Press **New**  (left action key).
- 3 Use the 5-way navigator to move between fields as you enter information.

**TIP** Be sure to enter mobile numbers and email addresses in the correct fields so that Inbox and Messaging can find this info when you address a message and Calendar can find your contacts when you want to invite them to meetings.


Here are some helpful tips for entering info:

- To enter complete name or address (work, home, or other) information, tap the arrow on the right side of the line and enter the information in the box that appears. When finished, tap outside the box to accept the information and close the box.
  - To add a caller ID picture that displays when that person calls, select **Picture**, and then select **Camera** and take a picture, or select an existing picture from Thumbnails view.
  - To assign the entry to one or more categories, select **Categories** and then check the categories under which you want this entry to appear.
- 4 To add a note to an entry, select the **Notes** tab.

- To assign a ringtone to the entry, select **Ring tone** and select a tone.
- After you enter all the information, press **OK** .



### Viewing or changing contact information

The contacts list displays contacts stored on your smartphone, followed by contacts stored on your SIM card.


- In the Contacts list (viewed by name), begin entering one of the following for the contact you want to view or edit:
  - First name
  - Last name
  - First initial and last initial separated by a space
  - Phone number (be sure to press **Option**  twice to turn on Option Lock before entering a phone number)

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can find a contact by company name. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **View By > Company**. Select a company name to see the contacts who work there.



**TIP** To view a particular group of contacts, press **Menu** (right action key), select **Filter**, and then select the category you want to view. To view contacts on the SIM card only, press **Menu** (right action key) and select **SIM Manager**.

- Select the entry you want to open.
- Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit**.
- Make changes to the entry as necessary.
- Press **OK** .

### Deleting a contact

- In the Contacts list, highlight the contact you want to delete.
- Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Delete Contact**.
- Select **Yes**.



## Customizing Contacts

- 1 Go to the Contacts list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 **Set any of the following options:**
  - Show alphabetical index:** Displays the alphabet at the top of the Contacts list. You can use this index to find a contact.
  - Show contact names only:** Enables you to fit more names on the Contacts list by hiding everything but the contact's name.
  - Area code:** Specifies the default area code for new contact entries.
- 4 Press **OK** .

## Finding a contact in an online address book



In addition to having contacts on your device, you can also access contact information from your organization's online address book or Global Address List (GAL).

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Do the following:

- Make sure you are accessing an Exchange Server 2003 upgraded to Service Pack 2.
  - Add access to the online address book to your smartphone. See [Adding an online address book](#).
  - After adding the online address book, you must synchronize with the Exchange Server in order for the Find Online option to appear.
- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Contacts**.
  - 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Find Online**.

## Calendar

### Displaying your calendar

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Calendar**.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **View**.

- 3 Select one of the following views:
- Agenda:** Shows your daily schedule in list format. Upcoming appointments are bold; past appointments are dimmed.

**Day:** Shows your daily schedule in day-planner format.

**Week:** Shows your schedule for an entire week.

**Month:** Shows your schedule for a whole month.

■ A morning appointment

▲ An afternoon appointment

■ Both morning and evening appointments

□ An all-day event

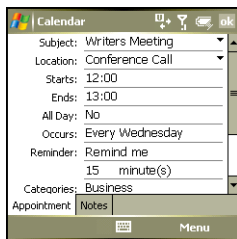
**Year:** Shows a calendar for a six-month period.



**TIP** Don't confuse the view name displayed above the left action key with the current view. The left action key displays the name of the next view you see when you press the key.

- 4 Use the 5-way to move to another day, week, month, or year (based on the current view).

## Creating an appointment

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Calendar**.




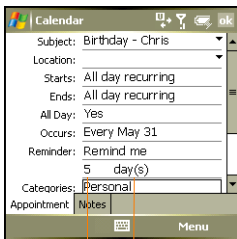
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **New Appointment**.
- 3 Enter a subject (description) and a location.
- 4 Select **Starts** and select the starting date and time.
- 5 Select **Ends** and select the ending date and time.
- 6 Press **OK** .



**TIP** To pencil in an appointment, open the appointment, select **Status**, and then select **Tentative**.

### Adding an alarm reminder to an event

- 1 Create an event, and then select it.
- 2 Press **Edit**  (left action key).
- 3 Select **Reminder**, and then select **Remind Me**.
- 4 Enter the number of minutes, hours, days, or weeks before the event you would like to receive the alarm.



Type of time units


Number of time units

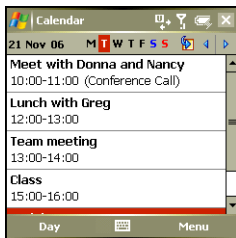
- 5 Press **OK** .


### Creating an untimed event


An untimed event, such as a birthday, anniversary, or vacation, does not occur at a particular time. These events appear as banners at the top of your calendar; they don't occupy blocks of time. For example, "Submit Final Draft" in the screenshot shown here is an untimed event.

**DID YOU KNOW?** An untimed event can last longer than a day.


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Calendar**.




- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **New Appointment**.
- 3 Enter a subject (description).
- 4 Select the starting and ending dates.

- 5 Select **All Day**, and then select **Yes**.
- 6 Press **OK** .

### Scheduling a repeating appointment

- 1 Create an appointment or untimed event, and then select it.
- 2 Press **Edit**  (left action key).
- 3 Select **Occurs**, and then select a repeat pattern. To create a repeat pattern, select **Edit pattern** and follow the onscreen instructions.


**TIP** To enter a birthday or an anniversary, create an untimed event that repeats every year.

- 4 Press **OK** .

### Sending a meeting request

You can email meeting invitations to contacts who use Microsoft Office Outlook® or Outlook Mobile.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Create contact entries with email addresses for the people you want to invite to a meeting. You can't access contact entries without email addresses from your calendar.

- 1 Create an event, and then select it.
- 2 Press **Edit**  (left action key).
- 3 Select **Attendees**, and then select the name of the contact you want to invite. To invite other attendees, select **Add** and select the names.

**DID YOU KNOW?** If you are using an Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2, you can use your corporate Global Address List to find contact information for an attendee. Select **Attendees**, press **Menu** (right action key), and then select **Find Online**. Enter the name of the attendee and select **Find**.


- 4 Press **OK** .

The next time you synchronize, the meeting request is sent to the attendees. When attendees accept your meeting request, the meeting is automatically added to their schedules. When you receive their response, your calendar is updated as well.

### Marking an event as sensitive

If other people have access to your Microsoft Office Outlook calendar on your computer and you don't want them to see

an appointment, you can mark that appointment as private to hide it from other Microsoft Office Outlook users.

- 1 Create an event, and then select it.
- 2 Press **Edit**  (left action key).
- 3 Select **Sensitivity**, and then select one of the following:

**Private:** Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see “Please treat this as Private” near the top of an open appointment. If you sync with Exchange Server, other users who can access your folders can’t see your private events; they see private events as unavailable time slots.

**Personal:** Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see “Please treat this as Personal” near the top of an open appointment.

**Confidential:** Displays the event on your smartphone and on your computer. Meeting attendees or recipients see “Please treat this as Confidential” near the top of an open appointment.

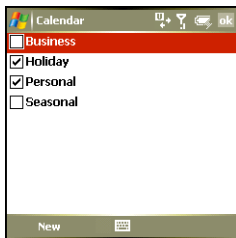
**TIP** If you don’t see an option on the screen, press **Down** on the 5-way to scroll to other options. For example, when editing an event, you don’t see the Sensitivity option until you scroll toward the bottom of the entry.


- 4 Press **OK** .



## Organizing your schedule

Use categories to view various types of events.

- 1 Create an event, and then select it.



- 2 Press **Edit**  (left action key).
- 3 Select **Category**, and then check the categories that apply to this event. To add a new category, press **New**


 (left action key), enter the category name, and then press **OK** .

- 4 Press **OK**  two more times.
- 5 After you assign events to categories, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Filter**.

**TIP** Wonder why you're not seeing all the events in your day? Check to make sure that the filter is set to All Appointments.

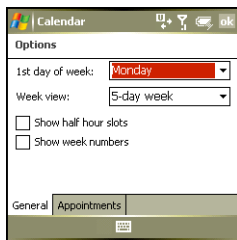
- 6 Select the type of events you want to view.

### Deleting an event

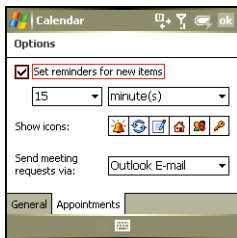
- 1 Highlight the event you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Delete Appointment**.
- 3 Select **Yes**.

### Customizing Calendar

- 1 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.









- 2 On the **General** tab, set any of the following options:
  - 1st day of week:** Specifies Sunday or Monday as the first day of the week for all Calendar views.
  - Week view:** Specifies whether five, six, or seven days appear in Week View.
  - Show half hour slots:** Specifies whether time slots appear in hour or half-hour increments in Day View and Week View.
  - Show week numbers:** Specifies whether week numbers (1–52) appear in Week View.
- 3 Select the **Appointments** tab and set any of the following options:



### Set reminders for new items:

Specifies whether a reminder is automatically added to new events and how long before the event the reminder appears. You can override this setting for individual events.

**Show icons:** Specifies which icons appear next to events.

-  The event has a reminder.
-  The event repeats in a specified pattern.
-  The event has a note attached.
-  A location has been assigned to the event.
-  The event is a meeting.
-  The event is marked private.

**TIP** Not all icons appear in all Calendar views.




**Send meeting requests via:** Specifies the messaging method used to send meeting requests: email, MMS, or SMS.

- 4 Press **OK** .

## Tasks

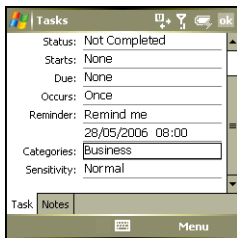
You can use Tasks to remind you of tasks you need to complete and to keep a record of completed tasks.

### Adding a task

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Tasks** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **New Task**.

**TIP** You can also add a task by selecting the Tasks entry bar at the top of the task list screen.

- 4 Enter a description of the task in the Subject field.
- 5 Set any of the following:



**Priority:** Specifies the priority level for this task. Later you can arrange your tasks based on the importance of each task.

**Status:** Indicates whether the task is now completed.

- **Starts:** Specifies when the task begins.
- **Due:** Specifies the due date for the task.
- **Occurs:** Indicates if the task repeats at regular intervals and how often it repeats.

- **Reminder:** Sets an alarm for this task and indicates when you want to be reminded.

- **Categories:** Assigns the task to one or more categories.

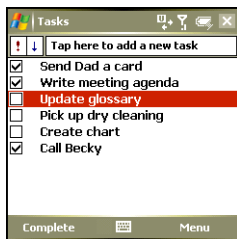
**Sensitivity:** Marks this task as Normal, Personal, Private, or Confidential.



**Notes:** Enables you to enter additional text for the task.

- 6 Press **OK** .

### Checking off a task

- 1 Select the task you want to check off.





- 2 Press **Edit**  (left action key).
- 3 Select **Status** and select **Completed**.
- 4 Press **OK** .


**TIP** You can also mark a task complete by tapping the check box next to the task on the Tasks list.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Overdue tasks appear in red.


### Organizing your tasks

- 1 In the Tasks list, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Filter**.
- 2 Select which tasks you want to view: **All Tasks, Recently Viewed, No Categories, Active Tasks, Completed Tasks**, or a specific category, such as Business or Personal.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Sort By**.
- 4 Select the sort method: **Status, Priority, Subject, Start Date, or Due Date**.

### Deleting a task

- 1 Highlight the task you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Delete Task**.
- 3 Select **Yes**.

### Customizing Tasks

- 1 Go to the Tasks list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:

#### Set reminders for new items:

Automatically adds a reminder to new tasks. The default reminder is set to 8:00 on the morning the task is due. You can override this setting for individual tasks.

**Show start and due dates:** Displays task start and due dates in the Tasks list.

**Show Tasks entry bar:** Displays the Tasks entry bar at the top of the Tasks list.

- 4 Press **OK** .




## Notes

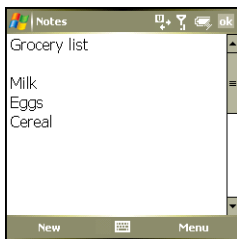
Notes are a great way to capture thoughts, questions, and meeting notes on your Palm Treo 750v smartphone. You can also create

a voice note or add a recording to an existing note.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** To take advantage of all the sync features available in the Notes application, install the desktop synchronization software from your *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*.

### Creating a note





- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Notes** .
- 3 Press **New**  (left action key).
- 4 Do one of the following:

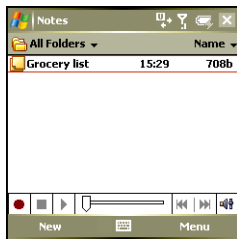


- Type the text with the keyboard.
- Write the text with the stylus.
- Draw a sketch with the stylus, crossing at least three ruled lines.

- 5 Press **OK** .

### Creating a voice note




- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Notes** .
- 3 To add a voice recording to an existing note, open the note to which you want to add the recording.
- 4 If the voice note controls are not visible at the bottom of the screen, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **View Recording Toolbar**.
- 5 Tap the **Record**  icon.



Voice  
note  
controls

- 6 Speak into your smartphone's microphone or hold it close to another sound source.




- 7 When you have finished recording, tap the **Stop**  icon. A **Recording** icon  appears in the note or note list, depending on where you recorded the note.
- 8 Press **OK** .

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can add several voice notes within a single note.

**TIP** To play a recording, select the voice note in the Notes list or open the note containing the recording and tap the **Recording** icon. Tap the controls at the bottom of the screen to control playback and volume.



### Creating a note from a template

- 1 Go to the **Notes** list.
- 2 Select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Templates**.
- 3 Open the template you want to use.
- 4 Enter the information.
- 5 Press **OK** .
- 6 Rename the note and move it to the appropriate folder. See [Organizing your notes](#) for details.

**TIP** To create a new template, open the note you want to save as a template. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Rename/Move**. Select **Name**, and then enter a name for the template. Select the **Show** list, and then select **Template**. Press **OK**.


### Organizing your notes

You can rename your notes, move notes to another folder, and move notes between your smartphone and an expansion (storage) card.


- 1 Go to the Notes list and highlight a note you want to move.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Rename/Move**.
- 3 Select **Name**, and then enter a new name for the note.
- 4 Select **Folder**, and then select the folder in which you want to store the note.
- 5 Select **Location**, and then select **Main memory** or **Storage Card**.
- 6 Press **OK** .

**TIP** To create a new folder, go to the Notes list, select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Add/Delete**. Select **New**, enter a name for the folder, and then press **OK**.

### Deleting a note

- 1 Go to the Notes list and highlight the note you want to delete.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Delete**.
- 3 Select **Yes**.

### Customizing Notes

- 1 Go to the Notes list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.

- 3 Set any of the following options:

**Default mode:** Makes the default entry mode either Writing or Typing. The default is Typing; if you change it to Writing, you can write notes directly on the screen using the stylus.

**Default template:** Specifies the default template for new notes.

**Save to:** Indicates the default location where new notes are stored.

**Record button action:** Specifies what happens when you press the Side button to record a voice note while in another application: whether the Notes application opens or whether you stay in the current application.

- 4 Press **OK** .



# Your Microsoft Office tools

---

Your smartphone enables you to take your office with you—including your Microsoft Office files. With Microsoft Office, you can carry, create, view, and edit Microsoft Word and Excel files directly on your smartphone. You can also view, carry, and manage PowerPoint files on your smartphone. You can keep updated copies of the files on both your smartphone and your computer so that you can work on them in the most convenient location any time.

## Benefits

- Manage Word, Excel, and PowerPoint files on your smartphone
- Improve productivity by taking important docs, spreadsheets, and presentations with you

## In this chapter

---

Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files. . . . .	165
Word Mobile . . . . .	165
PowerPoint Mobile. . . . .	171
Excel Mobile. . . . .	172

## Synchronizing your Microsoft Office files

---

You can edit files on your computer or on your smartphone and then synchronize your files with your computer. To synchronize Microsoft Office files with your computer, you must set the Files sync option; see [Setting synchronization options](#). The files are stored in your Files folder on your computer.

To copy a file from your computer to your smartphone, open **My Computer** or **Windows Explorer** on your computer, copy the file into the **Mobile Device** folder, and then sync.

## Word Mobile

---

You can create and edit documents and templates and save them as DOC, RTF, TXT, and DOT files. You can also edit Microsoft Office Word documents and templates that you create on your computer. However, keep in mind that

some of the information and formatting may be lost when you save the document on your smartphone.

**DID YOU KNOW?** If you have a PDF file (.pdf), you can view the file using Pictsel PDF Viewer. Press **Start**, select **Programs**, and then select **PDF Viewer**.

The following features are not supported in Word Mobile:

- Backgrounds.
- Bidirectional text.
- Document protection.
- Metafiles.
- Artistic page borders. Lined page borders are supported.
- Password-protected files. Remove password protection on your computer before opening the file on your smartphone.
- Shapes and text boxes.
- Smart tags.

The following features are partially supported in Word Mobile:





- Picture bullets. Regular bullets are supported.
- Revision marks. Documents appear as though all revisions were accepted; if the document is saved, revision marks are lost.
- Table styles. Some or all of the formatting is lost if the document is saved.
- Underline styles. Unsupported styles are mapped to one of the four supported styles: regular, dotted, wavy, or thick/bold/wide.
- Legacy Pocket Word files. You can open PSW files, but if you edit a file, you need to save it in DOC, RTF, TXT, or DOT format.

The following features are not supported on your smartphone, but they remain in the file so that when you open the file on your computer, they appear as expected:



- Fonts and font sizes. Original fonts are listed on your smartphone and are mapped to the closest font available.

- Footnotes, endnotes, headers, and footers.
- Lists. Indented lists are mapped to the closest indentation level supported by Word Mobile.
- Page breaks. Although not displayed, all page breaks, except a break placed at the end of a document, are retained in the document.

### Creating a document


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Word Mobile** .
- 3 Press **New**  (left action key).
- 4 Enter the text of the document.
- 5 Press **OK**  to save the file. When you save a new document, it is automatically named after the first several words in the file.

### Opening an existing document

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Word Mobile** .
- 3 In the document list, select the document you want to open.

**TIP** To zoom in or out, press **View**, select **Zoom**, and then select the zoom level.



### Creating a document from a template

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Templates**. If you don't see **Templates** in the **Show** list, select **More Folders** to access this folder.
- 3 Open the template you want to use and enter the information.
- 4 Press **OK** .
- 5 Rename the document and move it to the appropriate folder. See [Organizing your documents](#) for details.

**TIP** To create a new template, open the document you want to save as a template. Press **Menu** and select **Rename/Move**. Select **Name**, and then enter a name for the template. Select the **Show** list, and then select **Template**. Press **OK**.



### Finding or replacing text in a document

- 1 Open the document containing the text you want to find.

- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Find/Replace**.
- 3 Select **Find what** and enter the text you want to find.
- 4 (Optional) Check the **Match case** box to find text that matches the capitalization in the text you entered step 3.
- 5 (Optional) Check the **Match whole words only** box to find only full words that match the text you entered in step 3.
- 6 Select **Find** to locate the first instance of the text you entered in step 3, or select **Replace** and enter the replacement text.
- 7 Select **Next** to find the next instance of the text, or select **Replace** to replace it. To replace all instances of the text, select **Replace All**.
- 8 When you see a message that the search is done, press **OK** .


### Moving or copying text

- 1 Open the document containing the text you want to move or copy.

- 2 Highlight the text you want to move or copy.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Copy** to copy the text, or select **Cut** to move the text.
- 4 Open the document where you want to insert the text and position the insertion point where you want the text to appear.
- 5 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Paste**.


### Saving a copy of a document

**NOTE** If a document was previously saved on a computer, any unsupported formatting may be lost when you save the file.

- 1 Open the document you want to copy.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **File > Save As**.
- 3 Select **Name** and enter a new name for the file.
- 4 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder where you want to save the file.

- 5 Select the **Type** list, and then select the format in which you want to save the file.
- 6 Select the **Location** list, and then select whether you want to store the file on your smartphone or an expansion card.
- 7 Select **Save**.

### Formatting text

- 1 Open the document you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the text you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Format > Font**.
- 4 Set any of the following options for the highlighted text:

**Font:** Specifies the typeface.

**Font color:** Specifies the color.

**Size:** Specifies the point size.

**Bold:** Indicates whether the text appears normal or thick.

**Italics:** Indicates whether the text appears upright or slanted.

**Underline:** Indicates whether the text appears with an underscore.




**Highlight:** Indicates whether the text appears with a yellow highlight.

**Strikethrough:** Indicates whether the text appears with a line through it.

- 5 Press **OK**  to return to the document.

### Formatting paragraphs and lists

- 1 Open the document you want to format.
- 2 Position the insertion point in the paragraph you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Format > Paragraph**.
- 4 Set any of the following options:
  - Alignment:** Aligns the text with the left, right, or center of the paragraph.

**List:** Creates a bulleted or numbered list.

**Indentation:** Changes the paragraph margins.

- **Left:** Sets the left margin for the entire paragraph.
- **Right:** Sets the right margin for the entire paragraph.


- **Special:** Lets you indent the first line or set a hanging indent.

- **By:** Sets the size of the Special indentation.

- 5 Press **OK**  to return to the document.



**TIP** You can also use the Formatting toolbar to create a list and to align text. To indent text in lists, you must use the Formatting toolbar.

### Checking spelling in a document

- 1 Open the document you want to check.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > Spelling**. To check the spelling of specific text, highlight it before you select the Spelling command.
- 3 If an unknown or misspelled word is encountered, do one of the following:
  - Select the correct word in the list if the word is spelled incorrectly.
  - Select **Ignore** if the word is spelled correctly.
  - Select **Add** to add a new word to the spelling dictionary.

## Organizing your documents


You can rename your documents, move your documents to another folder, and move your documents between your smartphone and an expansion (storage) card.

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Highlight a file.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Rename/Move**.
- 4 Select **Name**, and then enter a new name for the document.
- 5 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder you want to move the document to.
- 6 Select the **Location** list, and then select **Main memory** or **Storage card**.
- 7 Press **OK** .
- 8 Select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the folder you want to view.
- 9 Select the **Sort By** list in the upper-right, and then select the sort method.


**TIP** To create a new folder, go to the documents list, select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the **Add/Delete** tab. Select **New**, enter a name for the folder, and then press **OK**.

**TIP** When you go to a folder, you can easily search your documents by sorting by type.

## Deleting a document

- 1 Go to the documents list.
- 2 Highlight the document you want to delete.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Delete**.
- 4 Select **Yes**.

## Customizing Word Mobile

- 1 Go to the document list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:
  - Default template:** Sets the default template for new documents.
  - Save to:** Sets the default location where new documents are stored.

**Display in list view:** Sets the types of files that appear in the documents list.

- 4 Press **OK** .

## PowerPoint Mobile











With PowerPoint Mobile, you can open and view slide show presentations created on your computer. Many presentation elements such as slide transitions, animations, and URL links are also supported. Microsoft® Office PowerPoint® features not supported on your smartphone include the following:

- Notes written for slides
- Rearrangement or editing of slides
- Files created in PPT format earlier than Microsoft PowerPoint '97
- HTML files in HTM and MHT formats

**TIP** To copy a file from your computer to your smartphone, open My Computer or Windows Explorer on your computer, copy the file into the **Mobile Device** folder, and then sync.


### Playing a presentation

**NOTE** If a presentation is set up as a timed slide show, the slides advance automatically. Presentations pause during zooming.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **PowerPoint Mobile** .
- 3 In the presentation list, highlight the presentation you want to play.
- 4 Press **Center** .
- 5 Do any of the following:
  - Press **Right**  to advance to the next slide or **Left**  to view the previous slide.
  - Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Go to Slide**, and select the slide you want to view.
  - Select **Next** or **Previous** to play animations.
  - Press **Menu**  (right action key), select **Zoom In**, and then select  to zoom in or  to zoom out. To scroll within the current slide, tap and drag the slide. To return to the slide show, select .

- Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **End Show**.

### Setting presentation playback options

- 1 Open the presentation for which you want to change the settings.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Show Options**.
- 3 On the **Orientation** tab, select the orientation you want. To select the orientation that best fits your smartphone's screen, select **Default**.
- 4 Select the **Playback** tab, and check the **Override playback** options for all files box.
- 5 Set any of the following options:

**Show without animation:** Turns off builds and other animations.

**Show without slide transition:** Turns off transition effects between slides.

**Use slide timings, if present:** Enables the timings recorded with each slide in a presentation. If a presentation is set up as a timed slide show, the slides advance automatically. Presentations pause during zooming.

**Loop continuously:** Advances to the first slide after playing the last slide in a presentation.

- 6 Press **OK** .

**TIP** To turn the presentation into a continuously looping slide show, check both the **Use timings**, if present, and the **Loop continuously** boxes.

## Excel Mobile

With Excel Mobile you can create and edit workbooks and templates on your smartphone. You can also edit workbooks and templates that you create on your computer. However, keep in mind that you may lose some of the information and formatting when you save the workbook on your smartphone.

Note the following formatting considerations:

- **Alignment:** Vertical text appears horizontal.
- **Borders:** Appear as a single line.





- **Cell patterns:** Patterns applied to cells are removed.
- **Fonts and font sizes:** The original font is listed on your smartphone and mapped to the closest font available. Original fonts reappear on your computer.
- **Number formats:** Microsoft® Office Excel® 97 conditional formatting is displayed in Number format.
- **Formulas and functions:** Unsupported functions are removed, and only the returned value of the function appears. Formulas containing the following are also converted to values:
  - An array or array argument, for example, =SUM({1;2;3;4})
  - External link references or an intersection range reference
  - References past row 16384 are replaced with #REF!
- **Protection settings:** Most protection features are disabled but not removed. However, password protection is removed. You must remove the password protection in Microsoft Office Excel on your computer before opening the file on your smartphone.
- **Zoom settings:** Worksheet-specific zoom settings are not retained. The zoom setting applies to the entire workbook.
- **Worksheet names:** Names that refer to other workbooks, arrays, array formulas, or intersection ranges are removed from the name list, causing those formulas to be resolved as “#NAME?” All hidden names are not hidden.
- **AutoFilter Settings:** AutoFilters that cause rows to be hidden are supported. Use the Unhide command to display hidden rows. Other AutoFilters are removed, but you can use the AutoFilter command in Excel Mobile to perform similar functions.
- **Chart Formatting:** All charts are saved as they appear in Excel Mobile. Unsupported chart types are changed to one of these supported types: Column, Bar, Line, Pie, Scatter, and Area. Background colors, gridlines, data labels, trend lines, shadows, 3D effects, secondary axes, and logarithmic scales are turned off.


The following features aren't supported in Excel Mobile and are removed or modified when you open a workbook on your smartphone:

- Hidden, dialog, and macro sheets
- VBA modules
- Text boxes
- Drawing objects and pictures
- Lists
- Conditional formats and controls
- Pivot table data (converted to values)


**DID YOU KNOW?** If you have a PDF file (.pdf), you can view the file using Picsel PDF Viewer. Press **Start**, select **Programs**, and then select **PDF Viewer**.

### Creating a workbook

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Excel Mobile** .
- 3 Press **New**  (left action key).
- 4 Highlight a cell where you want to enter text or other info.
- 5 Enter the info in the cell, and then press **Enter** .

- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 to enter the remaining info.
- 7 Press **OK**  to save the file. When you save a new workbook, it is automatically named and placed in the workbook list.




### Creating a workbook from a template

- 1 Go to the workbook list.
- 2 Select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Templates**.
- 3 Open the template you want to use and enter the information you want to include in the template.
- 4 Press **OK** .
- 5 Rename the workbook and move it to the appropriate folder. See [Organizing your documents](#) for details.

**TIP** To create a new template, open the workbook you want to save as a template. Press **Menu** and select **Rename/Move**, and then enter a name for the template. Select **Folder**, and then select **Template**. Press **OK**.

## Viewing a workbook

**TIP** To copy a file from your computer to your smartphone, open My Computer or Windows Explorer on your computer, copy the file into the **Mobile Device** folder, and then sync.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Excel Mobile** .
- 3 In the workbook list, select the workbook you want to view.
- 4 Press **View**  (left action key), and then select any of the following:

**Full Screen:** Shows as much data as possible on the screen. To return to the normal view, select **Restore** in the upper-right.

**Zoom:** Sets the magnification level so that you can easily read the worksheet.

**Sheet:** Lets you switch to a different worksheet.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also switch worksheets by selecting the sheet list at the bottom of the screen.

**Split:** Divides the window into two scrollable areas. To move the split bar, tap and drag it. To remove the split bar, select **View > Remove Split**.

**Freeze Panes:** Locks rows and columns so they remain visible while you scroll. Highlight the cell at the juncture you want to lock before you select this command. To unlock the rows or columns, select **View > Unfreeze Panes**.




**Toolbar:** Indicates whether the toolbar appears onscreen.

**Status Bar:** Indicates whether the status bar appears onscreen.

**Show:** Indicates whether headings and scroll bars appear onscreen.


**TIP** To jump to a cell or region, press Menu and select **Edit > Go To**. Select **Cell reference or name** and enter the target cell info or select **Current region**. Select **OK**.

## Calculating a sum

- 1 Press **View**  (left action key) and select **Toolbar**.
- 2 Highlight the cell where you want to insert the sum.
- 3 Select .
- 4 Tap and drag the stylus across the cells you want to add.
- 5 Press **Enter** .

**TIP** For simple calculations, use the Calculator (see [Calculator](#)).

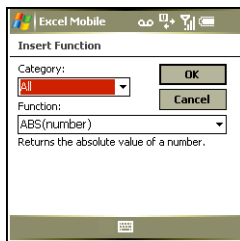
## Entering a formula


- 1 Highlight the cell where you want to enter the formula.
- 2 Enter equals sign ( = ) followed by any values, cell references, name references, operators, and functions.  
Examples:
  - =(B4/25)+100
  - =Revenue-Expenses
- 3 Press **Enter** .

**TIP** To insert a symbol, place the insertion point where you want the symbol. Press **Menu** and select **Insert > Symbol**. Highlight the symbol you want to insert, and then select **Insert**.

## Inserting a function


- 1 Open the workbook where you want to insert the function.



- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Insert > Function**.
- 3 Select the **Category** list, and then select the type of function you want to insert.
- 4 Select the **Function** list, and then select the specific function you want to insert.
- 5 Select **OK**.




### Entering a sequence automatically

- 1 Highlight both the cells containing the info you want to automate and the adjacent destination cells.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Fill**.
- 3 Select the **Direction** list, and then select the direction you want to populate.
- 4 Select the **Fill type** list, and then select **Series**.
- 5 Select the **Series type** list, and then select the type of series you want. If you select **Date** or **Number**, enter a **Step value** increment.
- 6 Select **OK**.


**TIP** Select **Autofill** as the series type to quickly fill cells with repetitive data such as numbers or repeated text. Autofill takes the content of the first cell in the highlighted row or column and copies it down or across the rest of the selection.

### Adding cells, rows, and columns

- 1 Open the workbook you want to add to.
- 2 Highlight the area where you want to insert elements.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Insert > Cells**.
- 4 Select how you want to insert the elements:
  - Shift cells right:** Inserts a new cell. The highlighted cell and all cells on its right move one column to the right.
  - Shift cells down:** Inserts a new cell. The highlighted cell and all cells below it move down one row.
  - Entire row:** Inserts a new row. The entire row in which the highlighted cell is located and all rows below it move down one row.
  - Entire column:** Inserts a new column. The entire column in which the highlighted cell is located and all columns to its right move one column to the right.
- 5 Select **OK**.

**TIP** To add a new worksheet, press **Menu** and select **Format > Modify Sheets**. Select **Insert**, enter a name for the worksheet, and then press **OK**. To change the order of the worksheets, highlight a worksheet you want to move, and then select **Move Up** or **Move Down**. Press **OK** to finish.

### Formatting cells

- 1 Open the workbook you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the cells you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Format > Cells**.
- 4 Select any of the following:

**Size:** Sets the row height and column width.

**Number:** Sets the type of information the cells contain.

**Align:** Sets whether text wraps within the highlighted cells, and sets horizontal and vertical alignment position.


**Font:** Sets the typeface, color, size, and style attributes.

**Borders:** Turns borders on and off for various cell edges, and sets the border and background colors.

- 5 Press **OK** .

**TIP** To name the highlighted cell or range of cells, press **Menu** and select **Insert > Define Name**. Enter the name and select **Add**. Press **OK**.

### Formatting rows and columns

- 1 Open the workbook you want to format.
- 2 Highlight the rows or columns you want to format.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key), and then select **Format > Row** or **Format > Column**.
- 4 Select any of the following:



**AutoFit:** Adjusts the size of the highlighted rows or columns to their contents.

**Hide:** Hides the highlighted rows or columns.


**Unhide:** Displays hidden rows or columns in the highlighted area.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can adjust the column and row size by tapping and dragging the right edge of the column or the bottom edge of the row. To automatically fit rows and columns to their contents, double-tap the lower edge of the row heading or the right edge of the column heading.

### Renaming a worksheet


- 1 Open the workbook containing the worksheet you want to rename.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Format > Modify Sheets**.
- 3 In the Sheets list, highlight the worksheet you want to rename.
- 4 Select **Rename**, enter a new name for the worksheet, and then press **OK**  twice.

### Sorting info in a worksheet

- 1 Highlight the cells you want to sort.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > Sort**.
- 3 Select the **Sort by** list, and then select the primary sort column.

- 4 Check or uncheck the **Ascending** box to indicate if you want to sort in ascending or descending order.
- 5 (Optional) Select the **Then by** lists, and then select second- and third-level sorting options.
- 6 Check or uncheck the **Exclude header row from** sort box to indicate whether you want to sort the header row.
- 7 Select **OK**.





### Filtering info in a worksheet

- 1 Highlight the cells that contain the info you want to filter.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Tools > AutoFilter**. A list appears at the top of each related column.
- 3 Select one of the new lists, and then select a filter. This hides all rows that do not include the selected filter.
- 4 (Optional) Do any of the following:
  - Select the other lists, and then select other filters.
  - To display all rows again, select the filter lists, and then select **All**.

- To turn off filtering, press **Menu** and select **Tools > AutoFilter again**.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also create custom filters where you specify comparisons. Select the filter lists, and then select **Custom**.


### Creating a chart

- 1 Open the workbook you want to create a chart from.
- 2 Highlight the cells you want to include in the chart.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Insert > Chart**.
- 4 Select the type of chart, and then press **Next**  (right action key).
- 5 Confirm the area you want the chart to include, and then press **Next**  (right action key).
- 6 Select the data layout, and then press **Next**  (right action key).
- 7 Check the boxes to indicate whether the first row and column represent labels.
- 8 Select whether you want the chart to appear as a separate worksheet within

the current workbook, or as part of the current worksheet.

- 9 Press **Finish**  (right action key).

### Formatting or changing a chart

- 1 Open the workbook that contains the chart you want to format.
- 2 Open the chart.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Format > Chart**.
- 4 Select any of the following:

**Titles:** Specifies the title of the chart and headings, whether a legend appears, and the placement of the legend.



**Scale:** Specifies the minimum and maximum scales for charts with x and y axes.

**Type:** Specifies the chart style. You can use this setting to convert your chart to a different format.

**Series:** Lets you add, modify, format, or delete related data points without affecting the info in your worksheet.

- 5 Press **OK** .



## Finding or replacing info in a workbook

- 1 Open the workbook containing the info you want to find.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Find/Replace**.
- 3 Select **Find what** and enter the info you want to find.
- 4 (Optional) Check the **Match case** box to find text that matches the capitalization in any text you entered in step 3.
- 5 (Optional) Check the **Match whole words only** box to find only full words that match any text you entered in step 3.
- 6 Select **Find** to locate the first instance of the info you entered in step 3, or select **Replace** and enter the replacement info.
- 7 Select **Next** to find the next instance of the info, or select **Replace** to replace it. To replace all instances of the info, select **Replace All**.
- 8 When you see a message that Excel Mobile is done searching, press **OK** .

## Organizing your workbooks


**TIP** When you go to a folder, you can easily search your documents by sorting by type.

You can rename your workbooks. You can also move them to another folder or move them between your smartphone and an expansion (storage) card.

- 1 Go to the workbook list.
- 2 Select a file.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Rename/Move**.
- 4 Select **Name**, and then enter a new name for the workbook.
- 5 Select the **Folder** list, and then select the folder you want to move the workbook to.
- 6 Select the **Location** list, and then select **Main memory** or **Storage card**.
- 7 Press **OK** .
- 8 Select the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select the folder you want to view.
- 9 Select the **Sort By** list in the upper-right, and then select the sort method.

## Deleting cells, rows, and columns

**NOTE** Excel Mobile adjusts formulas to reflect the new cell locations. However, a formula that refers to a deleted cell displays the #REF! error value.

- 1 Open the workbook containing the elements you want to delete.
- 2 Highlight the area you want to delete.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Delete Cells**.
- 4 Select how you want to remove the elements:

**Shift cells left:** Deletes the highlighted cells and moves all cells on their right one column to the left.

**Shift cells up:** Deletes the highlighted cells and moves all cells below them up one row.

**Entire row:** Deletes the entire row in which the highlighted cells are located, and moves all rows below it up one row.



**Entire column:** Deletes the entire column in which the highlighted cells are located, and moves all columns on their right one column to the left.

- 5 Select **OK**.

**TIP** To delete a workbook, go to the workbook list and highlight the workbook you want to delete. Press **Menu** and select **Delete**. Select **Yes** to confirm.

**TIP** To delete a worksheet, press **Menu** and select **Format > Modify Sheets**. Highlight the worksheet you want to delete, and then select **Delete**. Select **Yes**, and then press **OK** to finish.

## Customizing Excel Mobile

- 1 Go to the workbook list.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 3 Set any of the following options:
  - Template for new workbook:** Specifies the default template for new workbooks.
  - Save new workbooks to:** Specifies where new workbooks are stored.
  - Files to display in list view:** Specifies which types of files appear in the workbook list.
- 4 Press **OK** .



# Your application and info management tools

---

Your smartphone comes equipped with a variety of tools for managing and organizing your information. Get the most out of your smartphone: Install some of the thousands of business, education, or leisure-time applications available. After you use your smartphone to create or capture important business and personal information, use one of several options to share it with others. Insert expansion cards (sold separately) for a compact and limitless answer to the storage dilemma. And because there's one on your smartphone, you never need to carry a separate calculator.

## Benefits

- Locate info in any application
- Install applications, games, and other software
- Keep others up-to-date with meaningful business and personal information
- Store, carry, and exchange info
- Always have a calculator with you

## In this chapter

---

Finding information . . . . .	185
Installing applications . . . . .	187
Removing applications . . . . .	190
Sharing information . . . . .	191
Beaming information . . . . .	191
Using expansion cards . . . . .	193
Calculator . . . . .	197



## Finding information

Quickly find who or what you're looking for by using one of these search features:

- **Lookup:** Find and dial your contacts by name or phone number. See [Dialing by contact name](#) for details.
- **Search:** Look through the text in all the applications on your smartphone.
- **File Explorer:** Browse through the files and folders on your smartphone or on an expansion card.
- **Global Address List Lookup:** Look up names in your online corporate address list.


**TIP** For information on opening and closing apps, see [Opening and closing applications](#).

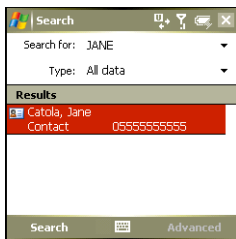
### Using Search

Search for files and other items stored in the My Documents folder on your smartphone or on an expansion card. You can search by file name or by words located in the item. For example, you can

search for words within notes, appointments, contacts, and tasks.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Contacts on your SIM card do not appear in the search results list.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.




- 2 Select **Search** .

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can also open Search by pressing **Option + left Shift**.



- 3 Select **Search for**, and then enter the file name, word, or other info you want to find.

**TIP** If you've looked for an item before, select the **Search for** list, and then select the item in the list.

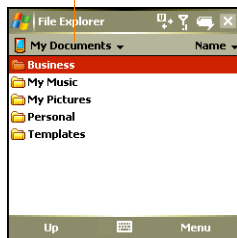
- 4 Select the **Type** list, and then select the kind of information you want to find.
- 5 Press **Search**  (left action key).
- 6 Use the 5-way to select and view an item from the results of the search.

### Exploring files and folders

You can use File Explorer to browse the contents of folders on your smartphone. The root folder on your smartphone is named My Device. My Device is similar to My Computer on your computer.


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **File Explorer** .
- 3 Select the folder you want to explore. If the folder you want is not displayed, tap the **Show** list in the upper-left and select **My Device** to view all folders.



Show list



**DID YOU KNOW?** When the items in a folder are displayed, you can sort them by name, date, size, or type. Select the **Sort by** list in the upper-right, and then select the sort method.

**TIP** The storage card symbol appears next to the names of files that are stored on an expansion card.

- 4 Do any of the following:
  - To open an item, select it.
  - To quickly delete, rename, beam, or email an item, highlight the item, press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select the appropriate command.

- To move a file to another folder, highlight the item, press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Cut** or **Copy**. Open the destination folder, press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Paste**.
- To highlight multiple items, tap and drag the stylus.

**IMPORTANT** Do not delete any files that you cannot identify. These files may be required for your smartphone to function properly.

## Installing applications

Your Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphone comes with several built-in and ready-to-use applications. You can also install any of the additional software included on the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* as well as other third-party applications that are compatible with Windows Mobile® 5.0 devices, such as business software, games, and more.

Applications you download to your computer are likely to be in a compressed format such as ZIP. If the file is compressed, you need to use a decompression utility on your computer, such as WinZip, before you install applications on your smartphone.

These instructions tell you how to install basic files onto your smartphone. Some software uses an installer or wizard to guide you through the process. For details, consult the documentation that came with the software.

**TIP** If an application does not have a Microsoft Mobile to Market certificate, you see a message indicating that the application is untrusted. If this occurs, you can indicate whether you want to continue the installation.

### Installing bonus software from the CD

The *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* includes several bonus software applications that you can install on your smartphone. You can install these applications when you install the desktop software, or you can install them later.

- 1 Insert the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* into the CD drive on your computer.
  - 2 Click **Add Programs**.
  - 3 Click the name of the application you want to install.
  - 4 Click **Install** (on the right side of the screen).
  - 5 (Optional) Repeat steps 3 and 4 to install additional applications.
  - 6 Synchronize your smartphone with your computer to install the application(s) on your Treo 750v smartphone.
- Make sure that the third-party application supports 240x240 screen resolution. Some older applications have screen-size limitations.
  - If you can try a free version of the software before purchasing it, you can test it first to make sure it works properly.

**NOTE** If you encounter a problem with a third-party application (such as an error message), contact the application's vendor. For general troubleshooting of third-party applications, see [Third-party applications](#).

### Installing third-party applications

When installing third-party applications, note the following:

- Install only apps that use Microsoft Windows Mobile 5.0 software for Pocket PC Phone Edition. The Microsoft Windows Mobile 5.0 software for Smartphone is not compatible with your Treo 750v smartphone. Also, programs written for earlier versions do not support 5-way navigation or action keys and can have performance problems.







**DID YOU KNOW?** You can purchase a third-party application that lets you run Palm OS® applications on your Treo 750v smartphone.

**TIP** Before purchasing a third-party application, try the free version.

### Installing applications from the Internet


You can use Internet Explorer Mobile to install Windows Mobile apps in the CAB file format directly from the Internet. For files in any other format except CAB, you must first download the files to your

computer and then install them to your smartphone by synchronizing.

- 1 Make sure your phone is on (see [Turning your phone on](#)).
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Internet Explorer**.
- 3 Go to the page that contains the link to the application you want to download.
- 4 Press **Left**  or **Right**  to highlight the link to the file, and then press **Center**  to start the download process.
- 5 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 6 Select **File Explorer** .
- 7 Go to the **My Documents** folder in File Explorer.
- 8 Tap the file you downloaded to start the installation program.


### Installing applications from your computer


**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** To install an application from your computer to your smartphone, you must first install ActiveSync® desktop software on your computer (see [Installing the desktop synchronization software](#)).

- 1 Open **My Computer** or **Windows Explorer** on your computer.
- 2 Double-click **Mobile Device** .
- 3 Copy the application file(s) into the Mobile Device folder.
- 4 Connect your smartphone to your computer to synchronize and install the application(s) on your smartphone.

### Installing applications onto an expansion card



**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** To install an application from your computer to an expansion card, you must first install ActiveSync desktop software on your computer (see [Installing the desktop synchronization software](#)).

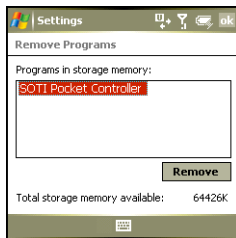
- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot (see [Inserting and removing expansion cards](#)).
- 2 Connect your smartphone to your computer.
- 3 Open **My Computer** or **Windows Explorer** on your computer.
- 4 Double-click **Mobile Device** .

- Double-click **My Windows Mobile-Based Device**  to open the Mobile Device folder.
- Copy the application file(s) into the Storage Card folder inside the Mobile Device folder.

## Removing applications

To free up memory on your smartphone, you can remove applications that you no longer use. You can remove only applications, patches, and extensions that you install; you cannot remove the built-in applications that reside in the ROM portion of your smartphone.

- Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- Select the **System** tab, and then select **Remove Programs** .



- Highlight the application that you want to remove.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Built-in applications that cannot be deleted are not listed in the Remove Programs list.

- Select **Remove**.
- Select **Yes** to confirm the deletion.

## Sharing information

---

Your smartphone comes equipped with a variety of options for sharing information, so that you can choose the quickest, most convenient way to send your info or to receive info from another device.

- When you have a file open in a program such as Notes or PowerPoint Mobile, you can easily share a file by selecting the **Menu**, and then selecting **Send via E-Mail** or **Beam File**.
- In Microsoft Outlook®, you can insert a picture or attach a note or other file to an email. You can also receive pictures and attachments (see [Your email](#)).
- You can synchronize to share info between your smartphone and your computer or between your smartphone and Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 (see [Synchronizing information](#)).
- If you are near someone, you can beam files and applications between your smartphone and your neighbor's device using the IR port or Bluetooth® wireless technology (see [Beaming information](#)).

- You can also store files on an expansion card and share the expansion card (see [Using expansion cards](#)).

## Beaming information

---

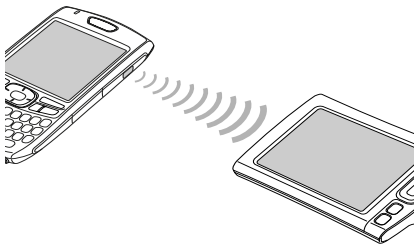
Your smartphone is equipped with an IR (infrared) port that enables you to beam information to another device with an IR port. The IR port is located on the side of your smartphone closest to the stylus, near the top. You can also beam using the built-in Bluetooth wireless technology on your smartphone.

The normal range for beaming with IR is about 20 centimeters (8 inches). The maximum range for beaming with Bluetooth technology is about 10 meters (30 feet). Performance and range are affected by physical obstacles, radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.



By default, the IR port on your smartphone is turned off. You need to turn IR on before you can beam.

**TIP** For best results, the path between the two devices must be clear of obstacles, and both devices kept stationary. If you have difficulty beaming, shorten the distance and avoid bright sunlight.


**DID YOU KNOW?** The type of information you can beam depends on the type of device you are beaming to. Other Windows Mobile devices are always compatible with the Treo 750v smartphone.

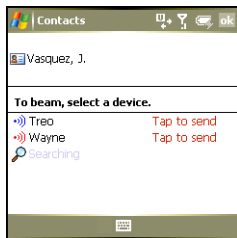


### Turning on the IR port

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Beam** .
- 3 Check the **Receive all incoming beams** box.

### Beaming a record

- 1 Highlight the entry or file you want to beam.
- 2 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Beam...** (the menu item changes names based on the type of item you highlighted).
- 3 Do one of the following:



**Bluetooth:** When the name of the receiving device appears, select **Tap to send** to begin the transfer. A blue icon indicates a Bluetooth connection.

**IR:** Point the IR port on your smartphone directly at the IR port of the receiving device. A red icon indicates an IR connection.



- 4 Wait for Done to appear next to the name of the receiving device before you continue using your smartphone.

### Receiving beamed information

- 1 Turn on your screen.
- 2 Point your smartphone's IR port directly at the IR port of the transmitting device.
- 3 When the Receiving Data message appears, select **Yes** to receive the beam.

**TIP** If you can't receive beamed info, press **Start** and select **Settings**. Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Beam**. Make sure the **Receive all incoming beams** box is checked. If you still can't receive info, try a soft reset (see [Resetting your smartphone](#)).

## Using expansion cards

The expansion card slot on your smartphone enables you to add miniSD cards to extend the storage capacity of

your smartphone. For example, miniSD expansion cards can store the following:

- Pictures
- Videos
- MP3 audio files
- Email attachments
- Games
- eBooks
- Applications
- Databases

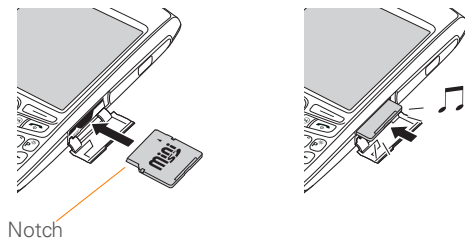
Expansion cards are sold separately.

**TIP** We recommend that you purchase preformatted expansion cards. To format a card on your own, you need to connect a card reader (sold separately) to your computer.

### Inserting and removing expansion cards

- 1 Open the expansion card slot door by sliding your fingernail or another thin object into the notch.
- 2 Hold your smartphone with the screen facing you and hold the card with the label facing you. The notch on the card should be toward the bottom of your smartphone.
- 3 Insert the card into the expansion card slot until you feel it lock into place and you hear the confirmation tone.

- 4 To remove an expansion card, press down and release the card.




- 5 After you feel the expansion card slot eject the card, remove the card from the slot.

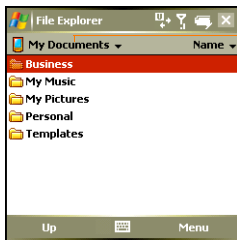


## Opening applications on an expansion card

After you insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot, you can open any of the applications stored on the expansion card.

**TIP** To run an application on an expansion card, your smartphone must have enough free space in the internal memory to run the application.

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select **File Explorer**.
- 4 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Storage Card**.




Show list

- 5 Select the application you want to open.

## Saving files to an expansion card



You can save space on your smartphone by saving files to an expansion card. For example, when you create new Word Mobile documents, notes, Excel Mobile workbooks, pictures, videos, and audio files, you can save them directly to an expansion card. Saving files to an expansion card also makes it easy to share those files with others. (Some applications may not support this feature.)

- 1 Insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Open the application you want to save the info from.
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Options**.
- 4 Select the **Save to** list, and then select **Storage Card**.


**TIP** If you don't see the Save to list on the Options screen, look on the other tabs (if present). If you still can't find a Save to list, the application may not support this feature.

- 5 Press **OK** .




## Moving info between your smartphone and an expansion card

- 1 Insert an expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Open the application from which you want to move the info.
- 3 Go to the list view.
- 4 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Rename/Move**.
- 5 Select the **Location** list, and then select where you want to move the info: **Storage Card** or **Main Memory**.
- 6 Press **OK** .




## Copying or moving applications and files between your smartphone and an expansion card

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select **File Explorer**.
- 4 Select the file or application you want to copy or move (see [Exploring files and folders](#)).



**TIP** Your applications are usually located in the My Device/Program Files folder.

- 5 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Copy** or **Edit > Cut**.
- 6 Go to the folder where you want to place the selected item.
- 7 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Edit > Paste**.
- 8 Press **OK** .

## Viewing available expansion card memory

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 3 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Memory** .
- 4 Select the **Storage Card** tab.
- 5 Press **OK** .


### Exploring files on an expansion card



- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 3 Select **File Explorer**.
- 4 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **Storage Card**.
- 5 Select the folder or files you want to view.
- 6 Press **OK** .

### Renaming an expansion card

If you change the contents of an expansion card, you may at some point want to rename the card to better match its contents.

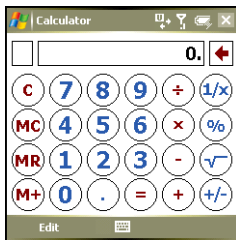
**TIP** Before copying information to or renaming the files or folders on an expansion card, or renaming the card itself, make sure the card is not write-protected. See the instructions that came with your card for details.

- 1 Insert the expansion card into the expansion card slot.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.









- 3 Select **File Explorer**.
- 4 Tap the **Show** list in the upper-left, and then select **My Device**.
- 5 Highlight the current expansion card name (Storage Card by default).
- 6 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Rename**.
- 7 Enter a new name for the card.
- 8 Press **OK** .

## Calculator

You can use Calculator for basic arithmetic calculations, such as addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division.



## Performing calculations

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **Calculator** .
- 3 Enter numbers and perform calculations, including the following:
  -  Clears the last digit in a multi-digit entry.
  -  Clears the current calculation or the displayed number.
  -  Calculates the reciprocal of a number.
  -  Calculates percentage.
  -  Calculates the square root of a number.
  -  Switches a number between negative and positive.




**TIP** You can paste numbers into Calculator as well as copy calculation results to be pasted into another app. Press **Menu** (right action key) and select **Edit**.

**TIP** For more advanced calculations, use Excel Mobile. See [Excel Mobile](#) for details.

## Using the Calculator memory

- To store a number, select the box to the left of the entry box. An M appears in the box.

**DID YOU KNOW?** When you store a number in memory, it replaces the number that is currently stored.

- To add the displayed number to the number stored in memory, select .
- To display the number stored in memory, select .
- To clear the memory, select .



# Your personal settings

---

Customizing is optional. But why not personalize your smartphone to make it match your lifestyle and work even harder for you?

You can easily customize your smartphone's sounds, fonts, screen colors, and more. Take advantage of various levels of security. Prevent making an accidental (and expensive) phone call by locking the keyboard. Some preference settings can help extend the life of your smartphone's battery. There are lots of ways to make your smartphone work better for you.

## Benefits

- Conserve power
- Make your screen easy to read
- Secure your data

## In this chapter

---

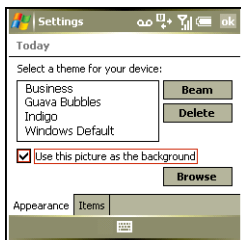
Today screen settings . . . . .	201
System sound settings . . . . .	202
Display and appearance settings . . . . .	204
Application settings . . . . .	206
Locking your smartphone and info . . . . .	210
System settings . . . . .	214
Connection settings . . . . .	220





# Today screen settings

## Selecting your Today screen background


- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.

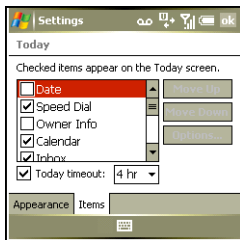





- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Today** .
- 3 On the **Appearance** tab, check the **Use this picture as the background** box.
- 4 Select **Browse**.
- 5 Select the picture you want to use.
- 6 Press **OK** .

**TIP** To change the color theme for your smartphone, select a new theme from the **Appearance** tab in Today Settings.

## Selecting which items appear on your Today screen

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.



- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Today** .
- 3 Select the **Items** tab.
- 4 Check the boxes next to the items you want to appear on your Today screen, and uncheck any items you want to hide.
- 5 (Optional) Select **Options** (if available) to configure the settings for the current item. Press **OK**  to return to Today Settings.
- 6 Press **OK** .

**DID YOU KNOW?** There are lots of third-party plug-ins available for your Today screen.



## System sound settings

When you're in a meeting, at the movies, or anywhere that silence is required, you can immediately silence all sounds on your smartphone, including Calendar notifications and system sounds. This does not mute the speaker during phone calls.

### Silencing sounds

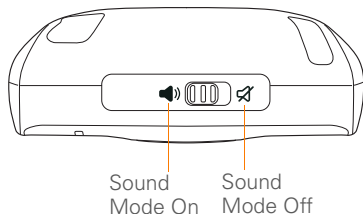
**TIP** Can't get music to play out of your smartphone's MP3 player? Check the ringer switch. If it's set to Sound Mode Off, you won't be able to hear music.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Your smartphone includes a silent alarm that can vibrate even when the ringer switch is set to Sound Mode Off.



- 1 Slide the ringer switch to **Sound Mode Off** . The smartphone vibrates briefly.
- 2 To hear all sounds again, slide the ringer switch to **Sound Mode On** .

When you slide the ringer switch back to the Sound Mode On position, it restores the previous sound settings. For example,

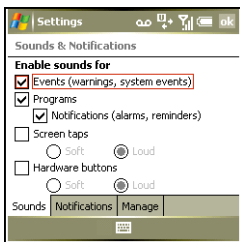
if the smartphone ring volume is set to the loudest setting and you slide the ringer switch to Sound Mode Off, you do not hear the smartphone ring. When you move the ringer switch back to Sound Mode On, the smartphone ring volume is still set to the loudest setting.



### Selecting Sounds & Notifications

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Sounds & Notifications** .
- 3 On the **Sounds** tab, set any of the following options:

**Events:** Turns sounds on/off for system warnings and error messages.



**Programs:** Turns sounds on/off in the applications on your smartphone.

**Notifications:** Turns alarms and reminders on/off in the applications on your smartphone.

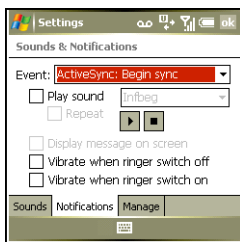
**Screen taps:** Turns sounds associated with tapping the screen on/off, and sets the volume level when this sound is turned on.

**Hardware buttons:** Turns sounds associated with pressing buttons on/off, and sets the volume level when this sound is turned on.

**TIP** To record, preview, delete, and send sounds, select the **Manage** tab. To record a sound, press **Menu** and select **New Sound**. To play a sound, select it and press **Play**. To delete a sound, highlight it and press **Backspace**. To send a sound, highlight it, press **Menu**, and select **Send Sound**.

- 4 Select the **Notifications** tab and set any of the following options:

**Event:** Specifies which action you want to change the settings for. The remaining options vary based on the action you select.



**Play sound:** Lets you turn the sound on/off for the selected event. To select a different sound select the list to the right of this setting, and then select a

different sound. To preview the sound, select Play Sound, and then select Play.

**Repeat:** Indicates whether the sound plays more than once, if turned on.






**Display message on screen:** Indicates whether a notification message appears onscreen for the selected event.

**Vibrate:** Indicates whether your smartphone vibrates to notify you about the selected event.






- 5 Press **OK** .

## Display and appearance settings

### Adjusting the brightness

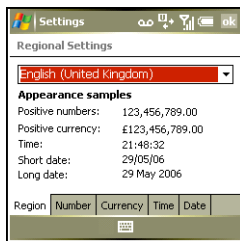
- 1 Press **Option** , and then press **P** .
- 2 Press **Left**  and **Right**  to adjust the brightness.
- 3 Press **OK** .

### Changing the text size and clarity

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** .
- 3 Select the **Text Size** tab.
- 4 Press **Left**  and **Right**  to adjust the text size.
- 5 Select the **Clear Type** tab.
- 6 To smooth the edges of screen fonts, check the **Enable Clear Type** box.
- 7 Press **OK** .

### Setting display formats

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.



- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Regional Settings** .

3 On the **Region** tab, select a region from the list. The region selection sets the default format settings.

4 (Optional) Select any of the following tabs to customize the format settings:

**Number:** Sets the decimal symbol and number of decimal places, the digit grouping symbol and group size, list separators, negative number sign symbol and format, leading zero display, and measurement system (metric vs. U.S.).

**Currency:** Sets the currency symbol and position, the decimal symbol and position, digit grouping symbol and group size, and negative number format.




**Time:** Sets the time style, separators, and AM and PM symbols.

**Date:** Sets the short date style, separators, and long date style.

5 Press **OK** .




### Aligning the screen to correct tapping problems

Occasionally, your screen may need to be readjusted. You know your screen needs adjustment when the wrong feature is activated when you tap the screen. To fix the problem, align the screen.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** .
- 3 On the **General** tab, select **Align Screen**.
- 4 Tap the screen where indicated.
- 5 Press **OK** .




### Changing the system color scheme

**TIP** You can also set the background for your Today screen (see [Selecting your Today screen background](#)).

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Today** .
- 3 On the **Appearance** tab, select a theme in the list.
- 4 Press **OK** .

## Changing screen orientation

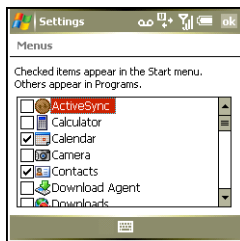
Landscape orientations are determined by which hand you would hold the stylus in.




- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** .
- 3 Select the **General** tab.
- 4 Select an orientation:
  - **Portrait**
  - **Landscape (right-handed)**
  - **Landscape (left-handed)**
- 5 Press **OK** .

## Application settings

### Arranging the Start menu

You can change the first seven applications listed on the Start menu. You can still access the remaining applications by selecting Programs from the Start menu, and then selecting the application's icon.



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Menu** .
- 3 Check the boxes next to the applications you want to see in the Start menu.
- 4 Press **OK** .











**TIP** Don't forget the six icons across the top of the Start menu. They're the apps you opened most recently, and it's easy to get back to them: just use the 5-way to select one of the icons


### Reassigning buttons

Buttons Settings lets you select which applications are associated with many of

the buttons and key combinations on your smartphone.



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Buttons** .
- 3 On the **Program Buttons** tab, highlight the button or key combination you want to change in the Buttons list. The hardware buttons are mapped to the following items:
  - **Start**  = Start menu.
  - **OK**  = OK/Close.
  - **Option**  + **Phone/Send**  = Messaging.
  - **Option**  + **Start**  = Calendar.
  - **Option**  + **OK**  = Task Manager.


- **Hold Side button** = Windows Media Player.
- 4 Select the **Assign a program** list, and then select the application you want to assign to the button or key combination you selected in step 3.
  - 5 Press **OK** .

## Setting up voice commands

**IMPORTANT** The Voice Command application is available only for English, French, and German.

Voice commands enable you to use speech to execute some commands on the Start menu and the Programs menu.



- 1 Assign the **Hold Side button** to Voice Command. See [Reassigning buttons](#) for details.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 3 On the **Personal** tab, select **Voice Command**.
- 4 Select **Enabled**.
- 5 Select the items you want to enable. If an item is highlighted and the Options box is active, select the Options box to choose the features you want enabled for the highlighted item.

### Using voice commands

**DID YOU KNOW?** If you have questions about the types of commands that can be used with Voice Command, you can go to the on-device Help by pressing **Start** and selecting **Help**.

The Voice Command application is available only for English, French, and German.



**IMPORTANT** Do not use voice commands in your car until you read the End user notice about this kind of usage; see [End user notice](#).

- 1 Set the ringer switch at the top of your smartphone to On.
- 2 Hold your device about 230mm (nine inches) away from your mouth, and then press and release the assigned **Voice Command** button (see [Setting up voice commands](#)). A tone plays and a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen.
- 3 In a clear voice say the command. For example:
  - To access Help, say, “Help.” After Voice Command finishes speaking, a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen. Say your answer. For example, say, “General” to access general Help topics.
  - To access your Calendar, say, “Start Calendar.”
  - To access your music, say, “Start Windows Media.” After Voice Command finishes speaking, a microphone icon appears at the top of your screen. Say your answer.



**TIP** You can move quickly through voice commands by stopping the voice command response before it finishes. When Voice Command responds, you can press the **Voice Command** button before it completes the question. Once the microphone icon is visible, you may say your answer.

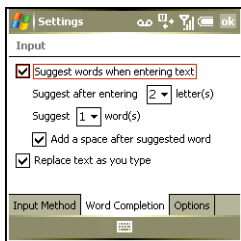
## Setting input options

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Input** .
- 3 Select the **Word Completion** tab and set any of the following options:

### Suggest words when entering text:

Indicates whether word suggestions appear as you enter text. You can also specify how many letters you want to enter before a suggestion appears, how many suggestions you want to see, and whether a space appears after you insert a suggested word.

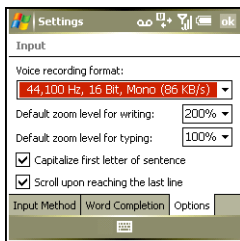
**TIP** To enter a suggested word, press **Down** to highlight the suggestion, and then press **Center** to accept it.



**Replace text as you type:** Indicates whether the text you type adds to existing text or replaces it. This is similar to the Insert function on a computer keyboard.

- 4 Select the **Options** tab and set any of the following options:

**Voice recording format:** Specifies the format in which you save voice notes.



#### Default zoom level for writing:

Specifies the initial size of text entered from onscreen writing methods.

#### Default zoom level for typing:

Specifies the initial size of text entered using the keyboard.

#### Capitalize first letter of sentence:

Specifies whether the first letter of a sentence automatically appears in uppercase, without requiring you to press a Shift key.

#### Scroll upon reaching the last line:

Specifies whether the display automatically scrolls when you select the last line of visible info.

- 5 Press **OK** .

## Locking your smartphone and info




Your smartphone includes several features that help you protect your smartphone from inadvertent use and keep your information private. The built-in security software lets you use your smartphone for emergency calls, such as dialing the 112 emergency number, even if it is locked.

- **Keyguard:** Manually disables all buttons and the screen's touch-sensitive feature to prevent accidental presses in your briefcase or pocket.
- **Auto-Keyguard and touchscreen lockout:** Automatically enables Keyguard after a period of inactivity and lets you disable the screen's touch-sensitive feature during an active call.
- **Phone Lock:** Requires a PIN to make and receive calls.
- **System password lock:** Requires a password to see any information on your smartphone.

**TIP** To avoid accidentally pressing onscreen buttons while you're holding your smartphone up to your ear to speak, you can disable the screen's touch-sensitive feature during active calls. When the screen's touch-sensitive feature is disabled, you must use the 5-way navigator to access items on the screen.

## Locking your keyboard (Keyguard)


By default, your keyboard locks so that you don't accidentally press buttons or activate screen items while your smartphone is in a pocket or bag.

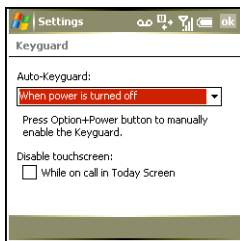
- To dismiss Keyguard, press **Center** .
- To manually turn on Keyguard when your smartphone screen is on, press **Option**  and **Power/End** .

**TIP** If you're using a headset or hands-free device and your smartphone is in a pocket or bag, you can manually turn on Keyguard during a call to prevent accidental key presses.

Auto-Keyguard enables you to configure the Keyguard feature.




- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.

- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Keyguard** .
- 3 Select the **Auto-Keyguard** list and then disable the auto-keyguard feature or set the period of inactivity that passes before the keyboard automatically locks.



- 4 Press **OK** .

## Locking your screen

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Keyguard** .
- 3 Check or uncheck the **Disable touchscreen** box to determine whether the screen's touch-sensitive feature is enabled during a call.
- 4 Press **OK** .

## Locking the SIM card

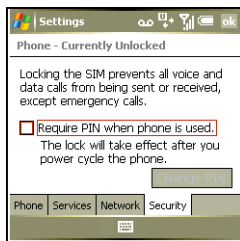
You can lock your SIM (Subscriber Identity Module) card to prevent unauthorized use of your mobile account. When your SIM card is locked, you must enter the PIN to power on your phone to make or receive calls, except for emergency numbers. The SIM card remains locked even if you move the card to another phone.




When your SIM card is locked, you can unlock your SIM card by trying to turn on the phone. A dial pad appears for you to enter your PIN.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** You need the following:

- Make sure your phone is on and that you're inside a coverage area (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)).
- Get your default PIN from your network operator.

**1** Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.



- 2** On the **Personal** tab, select **Phone** .
- 3** Select the **Security** tab.
- 4** Check the **Require PIN when phone is used box**.
- 5** Enter the PIN and press **Done**  (left action key).
- 6** Press **OK**  to finish.
- 7** Turn your phone off to activate the phone lock feature.

Your SIM card locks when you turn off your phone and turn it back on. When your SIM card is locked, you can unlock your SIM card entering your PIN.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can permanently unlock your SIM card. Select **Menu, Preferences**, and then **Phone Settings**. Select the **Security** tab and uncheck the **Require PIN when phone is used** box.





**NOTE** You need your PIN number to edit your PIN number or remove the locking feature. If you enter an incorrect PIN more times than allowed by your network operator, the SIM card locks. Once the SIM card locks, you need the PUK (PIN Unlock Key) to unlock the SIM card. Contact your network operator for more information and the PUK.


### Locking your smartphone

To protect your personal information, you can lock the system so that you need to enter your password to access any of your information or use other features of your smartphone.

**IMPORTANT** If you lock your system, you must enter the exact password to unlock it. If you enter an incorrect password, you are given another chance. Each time an incorrect password is entered, you are given progressively longer time periods

between your chances to enter the password. If you forget the password, you need to perform a hard reset to resume using your smartphone. Performing a hard reset deletes all the entries in your smartphone. However, you can restore all previously synchronized info the next time you sync (see [Defining speed-dial buttons](#)).

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 On the **Personal** tab, select **Lock** .
- 3 On the **Password** tab, check the **Prompt if device unused for** box to turn on the password feature.
- 4 Select the first list, and then select how long a period of inactivity must pass before you are prompted to enter a password to unlock the system.
- 5 Select the **Password type** list, and then select a format for your password.
- 6 Select **Password**, tap the **onscreen keyboard**  icon, and enter your password. Then tap the **onscreen keyboard icon**.
- 7 Select **Confirm**, tap the **onscreen keyboard**  icon, and enter the password again. Then tap the **onscreen keyboard icon**.

- (Optional) Select the **Hint** tab and enter a hint to help you recall your password.
- Press **OK** .


### Entering owner information

You can enter personal information that you want to associate with your smartphone, such as your name, company name, and phone number. You can also set whether you want this information to appear when you turn on your smartphone. If you lose your smartphone, this feature can help the person who finds it return it to you.

- Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.



- On the **Personal** tab, select **Owner Information** .

- On the **Identification** tab, enter any of the contact information you want to include.
- Select the **Notes** tab and then enter any additional text you want to include.
- Select the **Options** tab and check the boxes to indicate which info (if any) you want to appear on the screen when you turn on your smartphone.
- Press **OK** .



**TIP** You can also display your Owner Information on your Today screen. See [Selecting which items appear on your Today screen](#) for details.

## System settings


### Setting the date and time

Clock & Alarms Settings lets you set the time zone, time, and date for your home location and a location that you visit.

To set the display format for the date and time, see [Setting display formats](#).



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Clock & Alarms** .
- 3 On the **Time** tab, select **Home**.
- 4 Select the first list, and then select the time zone for your home location.



- 5 Select the hour, and then press **Up** ▲ or **Down** ▼ to increase or decrease the hour setting. Repeat this process for the minute, seconds, and AM/PM settings.
- 6 (Optional) Select **Visiting** and set the info for a location that you visit often.
- 7 Press **OK** .
- 8 If prompted, select **Yes** to accept your changes.

## Synchronizing the date, time, and time zone with the network

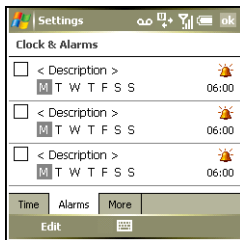
By default your smartphone synchronizes the date, time, and time zone with your network operator's network whenever your phone is on and you are inside a coverage area.





- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Clock & Alarms** .
- 3 Select the **More** tab.
- 4 To disable this option, uncheck the **Enable local network time** box.
- 5 If you want to keep your smartphone date and time set for your selected location, uncheck the **Use network time zone** box.

## Setting system alarms


System alarms let you set alarms that are not associated with a task or appointment. For example, you can use your smartphone as an alarm clock when you travel, or set alarms to remind you when it's time to take medication or pick up the kids.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.





- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Clock & Alarms** .
- 3 Select the **Alarms** tab.
- 4 Check a box to turn on that alarm.
- 5 Select the description next to the box you checked and enter a description for the alarm.
- 6 Select the days of the week you want the alarm to go off. You can select multiple days for each alarm.
- 7 Select the time you want the alarm to go off, and then press **OK** .
- 8 Select , check the boxes to select how you want the alarm to go off, and then press **OK** .

**TIP** To change the alarm sound, select the alarm sound icon, select the **Play Sound** list, and then select the alarm sound you want to use.

- 9 Press **OK**  to finish.
- 10 If prompted, select Yes to accept your changes.

### Managing identity certificates

Your smartphone may include preinstalled certificates. Certificates are digital documents that are used to authenticate and exchange information on networks. Certificates can be issued for a user, a device, or a service.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Certificates** .
- 3 Select any of the following:

**Personal:** Displays certificates that establish your identity when you log in to a secured network, such as a corporate network.



**Root:** Displays certificates that identify the computers, such as servers, that you connect to. These certificates help prevent unauthorized users from accessing your smartphone and information.

4 Press **OK**  to finish.

**TIP** To delete a certificate, tap and hold the certificate in the list, and then select **Delete** from the shortcut menu.




### Enabling error reporting

Error Reporting sends info that helps diagnose application errors for devices running Windows Mobile software. When an error is detected, a text file is created. You can review the file and choose whether you want it delivered to technical support. The information is used by programming groups at Microsoft for quality control and is not used for tracking individual users or installations for any marketing purpose. The info that is collected is technical info about the state of your system when the error occurred. No


documents (or any info contained in them) are intentionally sent with the report. To ensure further security, the report is transmitted via a secure connection and is kept confidential and anonymous in a limited-access database.

**DID YOU KNOW?** This error reporting method meets the privacy regulations of the European Union (EU) as well as the Fair Information Practice Principles of the Federal Trade Commission. To view the Fair Information Practice Principles, visit the Federal Trade Commission website at [www.ftc.gov/reports/privacy3/fairinfo.htm](http://www.ftc.gov/reports/privacy3/fairinfo.htm).

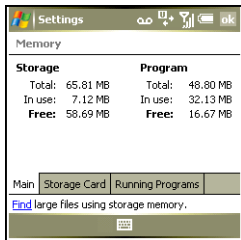
Your smartphone must be connected to your computer when you send the error report—provided your computer is connected to the Internet.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Error Reporting** .
- 3 Select whether you want to enable or disable error reporting.
- 4 Press **OK**  to finish.

## How much storage space do I have left?

- 1 Press and hold **OK** .
- 2 Select any of the following tabs:

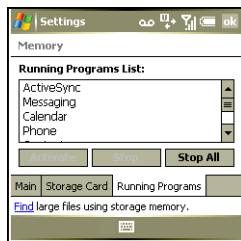
**Main:** Displays the amount of memory assigned to your applications and info, as well as the amount of memory in use versus the available memory.



**Storage Card:** Displays the amount of memory available on an expansion card that is inserted in the expansion slot on your smartphone.

**Running Programs:** Lists the applications that are in use on your smartphone. To switch to an application, highlight it and select **Activate**. To close an application, highlight it and select



**Stop.** To close all open applications, select **Stop All**.



- 3 Press **OK**  to finish.

## Optimizing power settings

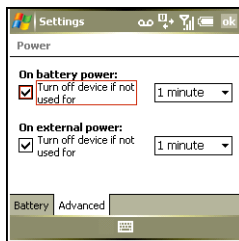
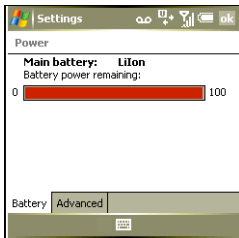
**TIP** An easy way to check the battery level is by tapping the **Battery** icon in the title bar.

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Power** .
- 3 On the **Battery** tab, view the power remaining in your battery.
- 4 Select the **Advanced** tab and set whether your smartphone's screen turns off automatically after a specified


period of inactivity. You can assign different intervals for battery power and external power.

5 Press **OK**  to finish.

**TIP** To conserve additional battery power, adjust the display backlight setting. Press **Start** and select **Settings**. Select the **System** tab, and then select **Backlight**. On the **Battery Power** tab, set whether the display backlight turns off automatically after a period of inactivity.




## Turning wireless services on/off

1 From the Today screen, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Wireless Manager**.

**TIP** To change the settings for one of the displayed wireless features, select **Menu** and select the wireless feature you want to change.



- 2 Turn your smartphone's wireless features on/off. Select **All** to turn all wireless features on/off.
- 3 Press **OK** (Ⓞ) to finish.

You can also turn wireless services on and off by tapping the **signal-strength**  icon at the top of the screen, and then selecting **Wireless Manager**.

## Connection settings


### Managing ISP settings

Your smartphone is already set up to connect to the Internet using a high-speed data connection on your network operator's network. To connect to the

Internet, simply start Internet Explorer Mobile.

For special situations, such as connecting to your internet service provider (ISP) or to a remote access server (RAS), you can set up another connection.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Obtain the following information from your ISP or system administrator:


- ISP server phone number or access point
  - Username
  - Password
- 1 Press **Start** (Ⓜ) and select **Settings**.
  - 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections** .
  - 3 On the **Tasks** tab, select **Manage existing connections**.
  - 4 Select the **Modem** tab.
  - 5 Highlight the connection you want to view or change, and then select **Edit**, or to create a new connection, select **New**.
  - 6 Follow the onscreen instructions to edit or create the connection.


## Connecting to a VPN (virtual private network)

If you want to use your smartphone to access your corporate email account or other files on your corporate server, you may need to set up a VPN. A VPN enables you to log in to your corporate server through the company's firewall (security layer).

Check with your company's system administrator to see if a VPN is required to access the corporate network. If you need a VPN, you must purchase and install a third-party VPN client to use this feature.




Before you begin setting up a VPN, ask your system administrator for the following information:

- Your username and password
  - Your server's domain name
  - Your server's TCP/IP settings
  - Your server's host name or IP address
- 1 Install your third-party VPN client (see [Installing applications](#)).
  - 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.

- 3 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections** .
- 4 On the **Tasks** tab, select **Add a new VPN server connection**.
- 5 Follow the onscreen instructions to enter the settings provided by your corporate system administrator.

**TIP** To manually start a data connection on your network operator's network or another network, go to **Connections Settings**, and on the **Tasks** tab, select **Manage existing connections**. Tap and hold the connection you want to start, and then select **Connect** from the shortcut menu.

## Setting up a proxy server



- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections** .
- 3 On the **Tasks** tab, select **Set up my proxy server**.
- 4 Check both boxes near the top of the screen.
- 5 Select **Proxy server** and enter the proxy server name.
- 6 Press **OK** .

**TIP** To change settings such as the port number, proxy server type, or credentials, select **Advanced**.

### Ending a data connection

If your service plan includes minutes-of-use fees for data connections, you can reduce costs by ending the data

connection when you've finished browsing the web.

- 1 Use the stylus to tap the data connection icons  or  on the title bar.
- 2 Select **Disconnect** from the shortcut menu.



# Common questions

---

## Transferring info from another device

---

For information on transferring your info from a previous Windows Mobile® device or from a Palm OS® device to your new Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphone, visit [www.palm.com/treo750v-support](http://www.palm.com/treo750v-support) for instructions.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can purchase a third-party application that lets you run Palm OS® applications on your Treo 750v smartphone.

**DID YOU KNOW?** If you have questions about Windows Mobile, you can go to the [Microsoft Windows Mobile website](#). Search for Palm devices or Pocket PCs for information.

**IMPORTANT** Do not use a backup utility to transfer your info from another device to your new smartphone. This can cause your smartphone to malfunction.

## Reinstalling the desktop software

---

If you have problems synchronizing using ActiveSync® desktop software, you may need to reinstall the software.

**BEFORE YOU BEGIN** Make sure your computer profile includes administrator rights to install software. In large organizations, these are usually granted by the system administrator.

- 1 Shut down your computer, and then turn it on again.
- 2 On your computer, click **Start > Control Panel > Add or Remove Programs**.
- 3 Remove Microsoft ActiveSync if it is on your computer.
- 4 Quit any active applications, including virus scanners and Internet security applications.
- 5 Insert the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* into your computer's CD drive and follow the onscreen instructions.

You must install the version of ActiveSync desktop software that came with your smartphone on the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*. Other versions may not work with this smartphone.

**DID YOU KNOW?** The *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* installs the software and drivers that let you synchronize with Microsoft Office Outlook®. If you want to synchronize with a different personal information manager (PIM), you must install a third-party solution. Contact the PIM's vendor to learn if software is available for your Treo 750v smartphone.

## Resetting your smartphone

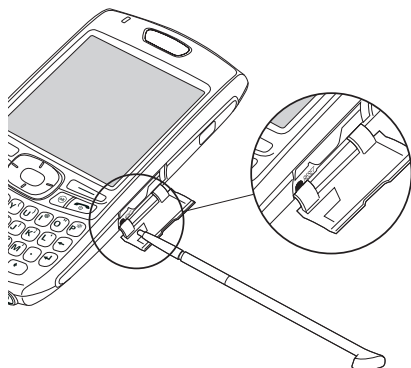
---

### Performing a soft reset

Performing a soft reset is similar to restarting a computer. If your smartphone is not responding or you have trouble synchronizing with your computer, a soft reset may help.



- 1 Open the expansion card slot door on the side of your smartphone.
- 2 Use the stylus tip to gently press the reset button next to the expansion card slot.



- 3 Wait for the progress bar on the Treo logo screen to fill before continuing to use your smartphone.

**TIP** You can also do a soft reset by removing the battery and reinserting it.

**DID YOU KNOW?** If the phone or the Bluetooth® wireless technology feature was on before a reset, these automatically turn on after the reset.

### Performing a hard reset


A hard reset erases all personal information, such as appointments, contacts, and tasks, as well as programs you have added, such as third-party software on your smartphone. Never do a hard reset without first trying a soft reset. You can restore previously synchronized information the next time you sync.



**IMPORTANT** Synchronize to restore your Outlook data, such as Outlook email, Calendar, Contacts, Notes, and Tasks. You can use a backup and restore solution (make sure it's an application that's approved by Palm, such as the one included on the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*) to restore configurations and preferences such as speed-dials, SMS entries, call log information, and personal settings.

**TIP** Some third-party applications do not create a backup on your computer when you synchronize. If you do a hard reset, you may lose info in these applications and you need to reinstall the application on your smartphone after the hard reset. Please contact the developer to find out if your info is backed up during synchronization.

**DID YOU KNOW?** When you synchronize after a hard reset, the source folder in My Documents changes from Treo My Documents to WM\_ your name.

A hard reset can tell you whether a problem stems from your smartphone or from an application installed on it. If you do not experience the problem after you perform a hard reset, the problem may be related to software you installed. See [Third-party applications](#) for suggestions on diagnosing third-party software issues.

- 1 Open the expansion card slot door on the side of your smartphone.
- 2 If the screen is off, press **Power/End**  to wake up the screen.


- 3 While pressing and holding **Power/End** , use the tip of the stylus to gently press and hold the reset button next to the expansion card slot.
- 4 Continue pressing and holding both buttons until the “Erase all data?” prompt appears.
- 5 Press **Up**  to confirm the hard reset.
- 6 Wait for the progress bar on the Treo logo screen to fill before continuing to use your smartphone.
- 7 (Optional) Synchronize to restore your previously synchronized info. If you use a backup utility, you may also need to restore a backup to recover additional info and settings.

## Replacing the battery

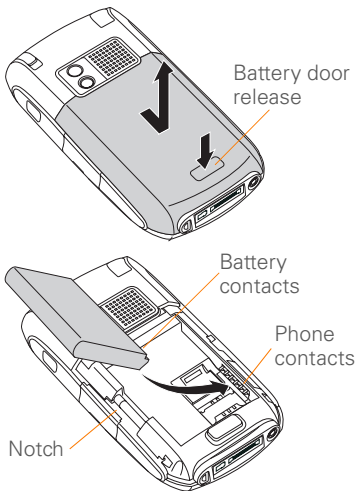
Your smartphone comes with a replaceable battery. Be sure to use a replacement battery from Palm that is compatible with Palm Treo 750v smartphones. Do not use a battery from any earlier model of Treo smartphone.

**TIP** Be sure to dispose of your old battery in an environmentally responsible and legal way. In some areas, disposal in household or business trash is prohibited. Visit [www.palm.com/environment](http://www.palm.com/environment) for more information.

**DID YOU KNOW?** Your smartphone stores all your info even when you remove the battery.

- 1 Press **Power/End**  to turn off the screen.
- 2 Use one hand to press the battery door release and use the other hand to slide the battery door downward to remove it from your smartphone.
- 3 Place a finger in the notch between the stylus and the battery, and lift the battery at a 45-degree angle.
- 4 Align the battery contacts with the phone contacts inside the battery compartment.
- 5 Insert the battery into the compartment at a 45-degree angle, pressing it into place. Slide the battery door onto the




back of the smartphone until it clicks into place.






- 6 Wait for the screen to turn on.

## Performance

### The applications are running slower than usual

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **System**, and then select **Memory** .
- 3 Select **Running Programs**.
- 4 Select **Stop All** to close all your open applications.
- 5 Press **OK** .

If the previous steps don't fix the problem, try doing a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)). If the problem persists, follow these steps to turn off the Voice Command setting, if it is enabled:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Personal**, and then select **Voice Command** .
- 3 Uncheck the **Enabled** box.
- 4 Press **OK** .

**TIP** Be sure that third-party applications are compatible with Windows Mobile version 5 or later. Applications written for earlier versions can have performance problems.

Also make sure to install only apps that use Microsoft Windows Mobile 5.0 software for Pocket PC Phone Edition. If you can try a free version of the software before purchasing it, you can test it first to make sure it works properly.

### My battery seems to drain quickly

If you have a push email solution (such as operator-provided push email) or if you have set up a schedule for wireless synchronization, check with your email provider or system administrator to make sure that the server is set up properly to work with your smartphone. Incorrect server setup can cause excessive drain on your battery.

For more tips on conserving battery life, see [Maximizing battery life](#).

## Screen




---

### The screen appears blank

- 1 If you're on a call, when the time period specified in Backlight Settings expires, the screen dims; one minute later, the screen automatically turns off. Press any key except Power/End to wake up the screen. Pressing Power/End hangs up the call.
- 2 Look closely at the screen. If you can see a dim image, try adjusting the screen brightness (see [Adjusting the brightness](#)).
- 3 If that doesn't work, perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).
- 4 If that doesn't work, connect your smartphone to the AC charger (see [Charging the battery](#)) and perform a soft reset again.
- 5 If that doesn't work, perform a hard reset (see [Performing a hard reset](#)).

**TIP** If you are using a third-party application, make sure that the application supports 240x240 screen resolution. Some older applications have screen-size limits.

### The screen doesn't respond accurately to taps or activates wrong features

- 1 Make sure there is no debris trapped under the edges of the screen.
- 2 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 3 Select the **System** tab, and then select **Screen** .
- 4 On the **General** tab, select **Align Screen**.
- 5 Follow the onscreen instructions to align the screen.
- 6 Press **OK** .

## Network connection

---

### Signal strength is weak

- 1 If you're standing, move about 3 meters (10 feet) in any direction.
- 2 If you're in a building, move near a window. Open any metal blinds.
- 3 If you're in a building, move outdoors or to a more open area.
- 4 If you're outdoors, move away from large buildings, trees, or electrical wires.

- 5 If you're in a vehicle, move your smartphone so that it's level with a window.

**TIP** Become familiar with low coverage areas where you live, commute, work, and play, so you know when to expect signal strength issues.

### My smartphone won't connect to the mobile network

- 1 Try the suggestions above for weak signals.
- 2 Turn off your phone and turn it on again (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)).
- 3 Perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).

### My phone seems to turn off by itself

If a system error and reset occur, the phone automatically turns on if it was on before the reset. However, if your smartphone can't determine if your phone was on before the reset, it does not automatically turn on the phone (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)).

### I can't tell if data services are available

The following icons appear in the title bar to indicate whether data services are available:



Your phone is connected to a UMTS network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.



Your phone is on and a UMTS data connection is active. You can make and receive calls and transmit data simultaneously.



Your phone is connected to a GPRS (EDGE if available) network, but you are not actively transmitting data. You can still make or receive calls.




Your phone is on and a GPRS (EDGE if available) data connection is active. You can still make or receive calls, but the data transmission is automatically interrupted during a call.

**KEY TERM UMTS (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System)** A third-generation (3G) wireless technology that is designed for high-speed data transfer with rates up to 384 Kbps.




**KEY TERM EDGE (Enhanced Data Rates for GSM Evolution)** A wireless technology that can provide fast data transfer and Internet access with rates up to 236.8 Kbps.

## My smartphone won't connect to the Internet

Your smartphone supports GPRS or UMTS wireless data networks. To connect to the Internet, you must subscribe to data services with your network operator.

- Contact your network operator to verify that your subscription plan includes data services and that these services have been correctly activated. Your network operator should also be able to tell you if there are any outages in your location.
- Press and hold **Power/End**  to turn off your phone. Then press and hold the same button to turn it back on.
- Perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).

- Confirm that data services are correctly configured on your smartphone by doing the following:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Connections** .
- 3 On the **Tasks** tab, select **Manage existing connections**.
- 4 If your network operator appears in the list, press **OK** . If not, contact your network operator for assistance.

## I can't send or receive text or multimedia messages

- Make sure your phone is on (see [Turning your smartphone on/off](#)).
- Contact your network operator to verify that your plan includes messaging services, that these services have been correctly activated, and that they are available at your location. (Your network operator should be able to tell you if messaging services have been experiencing transmission delays.)
- If possible, contact the recipient or sender of the message, and make sure

the receiving device can handle the type of message you're sending.

- If a text message arrives but does not display a notification, perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).

### I can't make or receive calls using a hands-free device with Bluetooth® wireless technology



Verify all of the following:

- The **Turn on Bluetooth** box is checked in Bluetooth Settings.
- Your Bluetooth device is charged and turned on.
- Your smartphone is within range of the hands-free device. Bluetooth range is up to 10 meters (30 feet) in optimum environmental conditions, which include the absence of the following: obstacles, radio interference from nearby electronic equipment, and other factors.
- The Bluetooth Settings screen is closed.
- You are away from other devices using the 2.4 GHz radio frequency, such as cordless phones, microwaves, and Wi-Fi equipment. If this is impossible,

move the phone closer to the hands-free device.



- The device specifications are compatible with your smartphone.

### I lost the connection between my smartphone and my Bluetooth headset

- 1 Press **Start** , and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Bluetooth**.
- 3 Select **Devices** tab.
- 4 Select your headset name from the list.
- 5 In **Partnership Settings**, make sure the **Hands Free** option box is checked.
- 6 Select **Save**.
- 7 Highlight the headset name.
- 8 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Set as Hands-Free**.
- 9 Test your headset by making or receiving a call.



If the headset still doesn't work, delete the existing partnership and create a new one. To delete the partnership:

- 1 Press **Start** , and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select the **Connections** tab, and then select **Bluetooth**.
- 3 Highlight the headset device name.
- 4 Press and hold **Center**  to open the shortcut menu, and then select **Delete**.
- 5 Create a new partnership (see [Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology](#)).

## Synchronization

Synchronization enables you to back up the information on your smartphone onto your computer or your server. If you ever need to perform a hard reset or otherwise erase all your information on your smartphone, you can synchronize your smartphone with your computer to restore the info. To make sure you always have an up-to-date backup of your info, synchronize frequently.

You can synchronize email and other information directly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003 with Service Pack 2 using Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®, or you can synchronize your smartphone with your computer, using the ActiveSync desktop synchronization software from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*.

**DID YOU KNOW?** You can go to the Windows website for more information at [www.windowsmobile.com](http://www.windowsmobile.com).

**DID YOU KNOW?** A common cause of sync problems is the presence of protective software, such as VPNs or firewalls, on your computer or network.

### Exchange ActiveSync (wireless synchronization)

This section covers issues with direct wireless synchronization with an Exchange Server. See [ActiveSync desktop software](#) for help with synchronizing using ActiveSync desktop software.

**TIP** If you are synchronizing with an Exchange Server and you're unable to change your lock settings, check with your system administrator to find out if a systemwide locking policy is in place.

### **An alert tells me that the server could not be reached**

Your smartphone had to wait too long to connect to the Exchange Server. The connection may have been lost, the server may be temporarily overloaded, or the server may have encountered an internal error. Check your Exchange Server name and proxy server settings (see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#)), and try again later.

### **An alert tells me that my account information could not be detected**

When you set up the Exchange Server sync options, the credentials page was left blank. Correct the credentials (see [Setting up wireless synchronization](#)), or set up your smartphone to sync only with a computer, and try to sync again.

### **An alert tells me the device timed out while waiting for credentials**


The Exchange Server credentials screen was left open too long. Re-enter the Exchange Server credentials, and try to sync again.


### **ActiveSync desktop software**



This section covers issues with synchronizing using ActiveSync desktop software. See [Exchange ActiveSync \(wireless synchronization\)](#) for help with direct wireless synchronization with an Exchange Server.

### **ActiveSync desktop software does not respond to sync attempt**


As you complete the following steps, synchronize after each step. If the synchronization is successful, you do not need to complete the remaining steps.

- 1 Verify that the USB sync cable is securely connected at all points (see [Setting up your computer for synchronization](#)).
- 2 Look for the ActiveSync icon  at the top of your smartphone's screen and


the ActiveSync icon  in the taskbar on your computer to make sure ActiveSync desktop software is running on your computer. If one or both icons is not displayed, do the following:

**Smartphone:** Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and then select **ActiveSync**. Select **Menu**  (right action key), and then select **Connections**. Make sure the **Synchronize all PCs using this connection** box is checked, and that **USB** is selected from the list.

**Computer:** Click **Start**, navigate to **Programs**, and then select **Microsoft ActiveSync**.

- 3 Double-click the **ActiveSync icon**  in your taskbar. From the File menu, select **Connection Settings**. Make sure the **Allow USB connections box** is checked, and then click **Connect**.
- 4 Perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).
- 5 Restart your computer and make sure ActiveSync desktop software is running.
- 6 If problems persist and you're synchronizing through a USB hub, try connecting the sync cable to a different

USB port or directly to your computer's built-in USB port.

- 7 If you're already synchronizing through a built-in USB port on the front of your computer, move the sync cable to a USB on the back of your computer (if your computer has USB ports in both places).
- 8 Uninstall the desktop software that came with your smartphone, and then insert the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*, which came with your smartphone, and repeat the installation process (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)).
- 9 Delete the existing partnership between your smartphone and your computer and create a new one by doing the following:
  - Disconnect your smartphone and your computer from the sync cable.
  - Right-click the gray **ActiveSync icon**  in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your computer screen, and then select **Open Microsoft ActiveSync**.

- Click **File**, and then click **Delete Mobile Device**. When asked to confirm, click **Yes**.
  - Connect your smartphone and your computer to the sync cable.
  - When the Synchronization Setup Wizard appears, follow the steps to establish a sync relationship between your smartphone and your computer.
- 10** If your organization uses a firewall or a VPN connection, synchronizing with ActiveSync may not work. Go to [www.microsoft.com](http://www.microsoft.com) and search for the following topics to help with specific firewall setup situations:
- ActiveSync USB Connection Troubleshooting Guide
  - ActiveSync with Sygate Personal Firewall
  - ActiveSync with TrendMicro PC-cillin Internet Security
  - ActiveSync with Norton Personal Firewall
  - ActiveSync with Zone Alarm Security Suite
  - ActiveSync with McAfee Personal Firewall
  - ActiveSync with Windows Firewall
- 11** Verify with your computer hardware vendor that your operating system supports your internal USB controller.
- Synchronization finishes but info doesn't appear where it should**
- With the included software, your smartphone can synchronize with the root folders of Contacts, Calendar, Tasks, and Notes. If you want to synchronize with a global Exchange Address Book, you must copy the addresses to your local Contacts list in Microsoft Office Outlook (right-click the addresses and select Add to Personal Address Book).
  - Microsoft Office Outlook subfolders and public folders are not accessible with the included software. You may want to use a third-party solution instead.
  - If you're trying to sync offline, be sure to set your Microsoft Office Outlook Calendar, Contacts, Notes, and Tasks to be available offline.

- If you're still having problems, try the following:
- 1 Make sure you're synchronizing with the intended desktop personal information manager (PIM). The *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc* lets you synchronize with Microsoft Office Outlook for Windows. If you use a different PIM, you need to install third-party software to synchronize. For more information, consult the company that makes the PIM.
  - 2 Open ActiveSync desktop software on your computer, and make sure the necessary synchronization settings are set to synchronize the files.
  - 3 Uninstall ActiveSync desktop software, reboot your computer, and then insert the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*, which came with your smartphone, and repeat the installation process (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)).

### Synchronization starts but doesn't finish

Make sure that you installed the desktop software that came with your smartphone. If you're not sure whether this software is

installed, reinstall it (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)).

### My video and music files won't sync

- 1 Make sure you have Windows Media Player 10 installed on your computer.
- 2 Reinstall your synchronization software from the *Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc*, which came with your smartphone (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)). Media file synchronization fails if you installed the synchronization software before you installed Windows Media Player 10.

### My appointments show up in the wrong time slot after I sync





- 1 Make sure that you installed the desktop software that came with your smartphone. If you're not sure whether this software is installed, reinstall it (see [Reinstalling the desktop software](#)).
- 2 Open Microsoft Office Outlook and correct the wrong entries.
- 3 Manually enter any information you added to your smartphone since the last time you synchronized.

- 4 Synchronize your phone and your computer.

You should now be able to assign time zones to your events without encountering this problem.

### My scheduled sync doesn't work

By default, a scheduled sync does not work while you are roaming. This is to prevent roaming charges on your account. If roaming charges are not a concern, follow these steps to continue your sync schedule while roaming:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Schedule**.
- 4 Check the **Use above setting when roaming** box.
- 5 Press **OK** .

### An alert tells me that ActiveSync encountered a problem on the server

There is a temporary problem with the server or the server may be temporarily overloaded. Try again later, and if the

problem persists, contact your system administrator.

### An alert tells me that there is not enough free memory to sync my info

ActiveSync ran out of storage space. Try the following:

- 1 Go to Memory Settings and close all running programs. See [Closing applications](#) for details.
- 2 If the problem persists, see [Making room on your smartphone](#) for suggestions on other ways to free up space on your smartphone.

### An alert tells me that ActiveSync encountered a problem with [item type] [item name]

An error occurred during the sync of a single item. This error can usually be corrected only by removing the item that caused the error. If you sync again to see if the error persists, be aware that items causing this type of error are skipped and do not show up again.

## **My Today screen settings are not restored after a hard reset**

Settings such as the background image and plug-in choices are not backed up during synchronization, so they can't be restored after a hard reset. If you use a backup utility, you may be able to restore a backup to recover your Today screen setting and other additional info.

## Email

---

### **I have problems using my account**

Occasionally you may experience problems using an email account after you set it up. If you followed the account setup procedure and are experiencing problems in using the account, verify that the account complies with your email provider's requirements by following these steps:

- Verify both your password and your username for your email account.
- Some email service providers require you to be on their network to use your email account. If this is the case, be

sure to use your provider's network as the connection type for the account.




- Some email service providers have other requirements specific to their service. For example, Yahoo! requires you to set up POP mail forwarding for your Yahoo! account to download email messages to your smartphone. Check with your service provider to see if any provider-specific requirements exist.
- Service provider settings frequently change. If your email account was working but you are currently experiencing problems, check with your service provider to see if any of the account settings have changed.

### **I have problems sending and receiving email**

Short periods of time when email is unavailable are common due to server problems or poor wireless coverage. If you have problems sending or receiving mail for an extended period of time, check with your ISP or email service provider to verify that the service is working properly.

### Scheduled email synchronization is not working

If email synchronization is occurring and you turn your smartphone off or the connection to your email service provider is disconnected, the synchronization fails.




- Check the synchronization schedule to make sure that email sync is set to occur at the expected day and time. See [Setting the synchronization schedule](#) for details.
- Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and then select **ActiveSync** . Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Configure Server**. Make sure the verify password setting is on. This is required for over-the-air synchronization.

### I have problems sending email

If you are able to receive email messages but cannot send them, try these steps, in turn:

- Make sure your ISP or email provider allows you to access email on a smartphone. Some providers do not offer this option at all; other providers

require an upgrade for accessing email on a smartphone.

- Turn on ESMTP. Many services require authenticated access, or ESMTP, to use their SMTP servers.
- Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and then select **ActiveSync** . Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Configure Server**. Make sure the **SSL** box is checked.
- Enter the name of a different outgoing mail server for sending mail. Many ISPs, such as cable companies, require that you have an Internet connection to their network to send email through their servers. In this case, you can almost always receive email from these accounts, but if you want to send email, you must send it through another server.

### My vCard or vCal email attachment isn't forwarding correctly

Microsoft Office Outlook provides several features that work with email client software on a Windows computer. For these features to work correctly, the email






client software must be properly set up. Follow these steps to check the settings:

- 1 Click **Start** on your computer, and then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Control Panel**.
- 3 Select **Internet Options**, and then click the **Programs** tab.
- 4 Make sure that the email field is set to the correct email client software.
- 5 Click **OK**.
- 6 Start the email client software and make sure it is configured as the default MAPI client. Consult the documentation for your desktop email application for more information.

### When I sync with my Exchange Server my info is not downloading to my smartphone



Check with your system administrator to obtain the name of the mail server that offers you wireless access to the corporate mail system. If you cannot obtain the name of this server (some companies do not give it out, because they do not want wireless access to their servers), you cannot use Exchange ActiveSync to synchronize with

the Exchange Server. You can also check the following setting:

- 1 Press **Start**  and select **Programs**.
- 2 Select **ActiveSync** .
- 3 Press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Configure Server**.
- 4 Make sure the **SSL** box is checked.

## Web

### I can't access a page

First, make sure you have Internet access: Open Internet Explorer Mobile and try to view a web page you've loaded before. To ensure that you're viewing the page directly from the Internet, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Refresh**. After confirming your Internet connection, try to view the page in question again. If it comes up blank, press **Menu**  (right action key) and select **Refresh**.

If you're still having trouble, the page may contain elements that are not supported by Internet Explorer Mobile, such as Flash,

Shockwave, VBScript, WML script, and other plug-ins.

Some websites use a redirector to their true home page (for example, if you enter the address <http://www.palm.com/support> it may resolve to <http://www.palm.com/us/support>). If Internet Explorer Mobile can't follow the redirect, try using a desktop browser to see the landing page of the redirector, and enter that address in Internet Explorer Mobile.

**TIP** Your smartphone can open your email application when you select an email address on a web page. If nothing happens when you select the link, try setting up your email application first.

### An image or map is too small on my smartphone screen

Internet Explorer Mobile has several viewing modes: One Column, Default, Desktop, and Full Screen. Switch to Desktop to see the full-size image (see [Viewing a web page](#)).

### A secure site refuses to permit a transaction

Some websites don't support certain browsers for transactions. Please contact the site's webmaster to make sure the site allows transactions using Internet Explorer Mobile.

## Camera

Here are some tips for taking good pictures with the built-in camera:

**DID YOU KNOW?** Pictures are 16-bit color. Resolution settings range from 1280 x 1024 to 160 x 120 pixels (1.3 megapixels to VGA). Video resolution settings range from 352 x 288 to 176 x 144 pixels. You can change the resolution setting by pressing **Menu** (right action key) and selecting **Resolution** (still images) or **Quality** (video).

- Clean the camera's lens with a soft, lint-free cloth.
- Take pictures in bright lighting conditions. Low-light images may be

grainy, due to the sensitivity of the camera.

- Hold the camera as still as possible. Try supporting your picture-taking arm against your body or a stationary object (such as a wall).
- Keep the subject of the pictures still. Exposure time is longer with lower light levels, so you may see a blur.
- For best results, verify that you have the brightest light source coming from behind you, lighting the subject's face. Avoid taking indoor pictures with the subject in front of a window or light.
- Make sure the subject is at least 0.5 meters (18 inches) away from the camera to ensure good focus.

Remember that when you synchronize, your Camera images are stored in the C:\Documents and Settings\<>Username>\My Documents\Treo My Documents folder on your hard drive (see [Camera](#)).

### The Camera preview image looks strange

Some third-party applications overwrite your smartphone's color settings with their own 8-bit color settings. This can affect the Camera Preview Mode. Delete third-party applications one by one until the preview image improves.

## Third-party applications

---

Sometimes third-party applications can cause conflicts on your smartphone. Third-party applications that modify wireless features may affect your smartphone's performance and may require extra troubleshooting. Use caution when installing the following types of applications:

- Ringtone managers
- Caller ID applications
- Instant messaging
- Applications that modify when your phone or data connections turn on or off and how your phone behaves

If you recently installed an application and your smartphone seems to be stuck, try the following:

- 1 Perform a soft reset (see [Performing a soft reset](#)).
- 2 Make sure the third-party application is compatible with the Windows Mobile version 5.2 operating system on your smartphone.
- 3 Delete the most recently installed application from your smartphone (see [Removing applications](#)).
- 4 If the problem persists, perform another soft reset.
- 5 If possible, synchronize or use a backup utility to back up your most recent info.
- 6 Perform a hard reset (see [Performing a hard reset](#)).
- 7 Synchronize or restore your backup to restore the info in your built-in applications.
- 8 If the problem is resolved, begin reinstalling your third-party applications one at a time.

- 9 If the problem recurs, delete the last application you installed and report the problem to its developer.

### Getting more help

Contact the vendor of any third-party software if you require further assistance.

**TIP** Remember that not all third-party applications were written with the Treo 750v smartphone keyboard and 5-way navigator in mind. You may encounter strange behavior or errors in these applications if you use the keyboard and the 5-way navigator.

## Making room on your smartphone

---

If you store a large number of records, or install many third-party applications, the internal memory on your smartphone may fill up. Here are some common ways to clear space on your smartphone:

- **Camera:** Large images or videos take up a lot of memory. Move images to an expansion card or delete images from

your smartphone (see [Pictures & Videos](#)).

- **Messaging:** Multimedia content and email attachments can consume excessive memory. Move multimedia content and attachments to an expansion card, or delete large files from your smartphone (see [Message status icons](#)). You may also want to empty the deleted items folder.
- **Internet:** If you save links to pages you've visited in Internet Explorer Mobile, you may want to clear all recent pages (see [Customizing your Internet Explorer Mobile settings](#)).
- **Third-party applications:** You can delete infrequently used applications or move them to an expansion card (see [Copying or moving applications and files between your smartphone and an expansion card](#)).

Also, remember that your smartphone includes an expansion card slot, and that you can store applications and information on expansion cards. However, you still need free memory on the smartphone itself to run applications from an expansion card.

## Voice quality

---

### Is the other person hearing an echo?

- Try decreasing the volume on your smartphone to avoid coupling or feedback on the other person's end. This applies to both the speakerphone and to the handset earpiece.
- Position the smartphone closer to your ear to prevent sound leaking back to the microphone. Keep your hand away from the microphone hole, which is on the lower-right side of your smartphone.
- If you're using Speakerphone mode with your smartphone lying on a flat surface, try turning the smartphone "face down" (screen facing the surface).

### Are you hearing your own voice echo?

Ask the other person to turn down their volume or to hold the smartphone closer to their ear.

**Is your voice too quiet on the other end?**



Be sure to hold the bottom of the smartphone, or the hands-free microphone, close to your mouth.

Check the signal strength indicator. If the signal is weak, try to find an area with better coverage.

## Where to learn more

---


### For a quick introduction

- **Quick Tour:** The Quick Tour introduces you to many of your Palm® Treo™ 750v smartphone's features. It is already installed on your smartphone, and you can open it any time. Press **Start** , select **Programs**, and then select **Quick Tour** .

### To register your smartphone

- **Online registration:** Visit [www.palm.com/register](http://www.palm.com/register) to register your smartphone and obtain benefits such as discounts on software and accessories, faster technical support, and special promotions, and important product updates including notifications on software updates, bug fixes, and more.

### While using your Treo 750v smartphone

- **On-device User Guide:** A copy of this guide is included on your smartphone. The on-device guide is specially formatted for your smartphone screen. To view the on-device guide, press **Start**  and select **Help**.
- **Online support from Palm:** For up-to-date downloads, troubleshooting, and support information, go to [www.palm.com/treo750v-support](http://www.palm.com/treo750v-support).

### If you need more information

- **Online forums:** Consult online Treo 750v device user discussion groups to swap information and learn about topics you may find nowhere else. Visit [www.palm.com/treo750v-support](http://www.palm.com/treo750v-support) for details.
- **Customer service from your network operator:** For questions about your mobile account or features, contact your network operator's technical support or customer service department.







# Terms

---

## **ActiveSync®**

The technology that exchanges and updates the information on your smartphone with the information on your computer. To open ActiveSync on your computer, double-click the ActiveSync icon  in the taskbar in the lower-right corner of your screen. If the icon does not appear, click Start, click All Programs (or navigate to the Programs group), and then select Microsoft ActiveSync. See [Installing the desktop synchronization software](#).

## **Alt (alternative)**

The key that you use to enter accented characters and symbols that do not appear on your keyboard. Press Alt , and then press a key on the keyboard to view the alternative characters available for that key. See [Entering other symbols and accented characters](#).

## **auto-off interval**

The time of inactivity that passes before the screen on your smartphone turns off. The wireless features on your smartphone

are unaffected by this setting. See [Optimizing power settings](#).

## **beam**

The process of sending or receiving an entry or application using the infrared port on your smartphone or using Bluetooth® wireless technology. See [Beaming information](#).

## **Bluetooth® wireless technology**

Technology that enables devices such as smartphones, mobile phones, and computers to connect wirelessly to each other so that they can exchange information over short distances. For more info, visit [www.bluetooth.com](http://www.bluetooth.com). See [Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology](#).

## **desktop software**

A PIM application for computers, such as Microsoft Outlook®, that helps you manage your personal information and keep it synchronized with your smartphone. See [Installing the desktop synchronization software](#).

**dialog box**

A set of options and command buttons that is enclosed by a border and that enables you to carry out a specific task.

**EDGE (Enhanced Data rates for GSM Evolution)**

An enhanced version of GPRS that delivers data speeds that are up to three times faster than standard GPRS connections, with rates up to 236.8 Kbps. (Additional charges may apply.) See [What are all those icons?](#)

**GPRS (General Packet Radio Service)**

A mobile Internet connectivity technology that allows persistent data connections. (Additional charges may apply.) See [What are all those icons?](#)

**infrared (IR)**

A way of transmitting information using light waves. You use the IR port on your smartphone to transfer information between other IR devices within a short radius. See [Beaming information.](#)

**Lithium Ion (Li-Ion)**

The rechargeable battery technology used in Treo 750v smartphones. See [Charging the battery.](#)


**Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync®**

Technology that allows your smartphone to synchronize email, contacts, calendar events, and tasks wirelessly with Microsoft Exchange Server 2003. See [Setting up wireless synchronization.](#)

**MMS (Multimedia Messaging System)**

An enhanced messaging system that enables you to send pictures, animations, and ringtones almost instantly. See [Creating and sending a multimedia message.](#)

**Mobile Device**

The component on your Windows computer that enables you to install applications and other information on your smartphone. To access it, open Windows Explorer or My Computer and look for the Mobile Device  entry. See [Installing applications from your computer.](#)

## Option

Press this key and then a second key to enter the character or to access the feature displayed above the letter on the second key. See [Entering numbers, punctuation, and symbols](#).

## partnership

The connection that you make between two devices by means of Bluetooth wireless technology. The devices recognize each other because each device finds the same passkey on the other device. After you create a partnership between the devices, you no longer need to enter the passkey. Partnership is also known as paired relationship, pairing, trusted device, and trusted pair on some devices. See [Connecting to devices with Bluetooth® wireless technology](#).

## Phone Off

Appearing on the Today screen, this indicates that your smartphone is not connected to any network, and you cannot make calls except those to emergency numbers. You can still use the organizer features, however. To turn the phone on/

off, go to the Wireless Manager. See [Turning your phone on](#).

## Phone/Send

The button on your smartphone that provides quick access to your Today screen and dials once you've entered a phone number. See [Making calls from the Today screen](#).

## PIM (personal information manager)

A genre of software that includes applications such as Microsoft Outlook, Palm® Desktop software, Lotus Notes, and ACT!. PIMs generally store contacts, schedules, tasks, and memos.

## PIN (personal identification number)

The password assigned to your SIM card by your network operator. Turning on the PIN lock secures your wireless account. See also PUK. See [Locking the SIM card](#).

## PIN2 (personal identification number 2)

A code that protects certain network settings such as fixed dialing.

## PUK (PIN unlock key)

A special extended password assigned to your SIM card. If you enter the wrong PIN

more than the allowed number of times, your SIM is blocked and you must call your network operator for the PUK. See [Locking the SIM card](#).

### **SIM (Subscriber Identity Module) card**

The smartcard, inserted into your smartphone, that contains your mobile account information, such as the services to which you subscribe. Addresses and phone numbers and SMS messages can also be stored on the SIM card. See [Inserting the SIM card and battery](#).

### **SMS (Short Messaging Service)**

The service that exchanges short text messages almost instantly between mobile devices. Treo 750v smartphones can send and receive text messages while you are on a voice call. See [Creating and sending a text message](#).

### **Start**

The menu on your smartphone from which you can open all applications. See [Opening applications](#).

### **streaming**

Technology that enables you to access media content—for example, watch video

or listen to an audio program—directly from the Internet on your smartphone without needing to download a file to save on your smartphone. See [Viewing a video](#).

### **synchronization**

The process in which information that is entered or updated on your smartphone, your computer, or a server is instantly updated in one of the other locations either wirelessly or by means of a cable connection. See [Synchronizing information](#).

### **UMTS (Universal Mobile Telecommunications System)**

One of the third-generation (3G) mobile phone technologies that is designed for high-speed data transfer with rates up to 384 Kbps. It uses W-CDMA as the underlying technology. See [What are all those icons?](#)

### **username**

The name associated with your smartphone that distinguishes it from other Windows Mobile® devices. If you install ActiveSync® desktop software, you are asked to give your smartphone a username. If you only synchronize wirelessly using Microsoft Exchange

ActiveSync, you do not need to give your smartphone a username. See [Installing the desktop synchronization software.](#)

### **Windows Mobile**

The operating system of your Treo 750v smartphone. Your smartphone uses Windows Mobile® 5.2. When installing third-party applications to your smartphone, be sure to install only apps that use Microsoft Windows Mobile 5.0 software for Pocket PC Phone Edition. The Microsoft Windows Mobile 5.0 software for Smartphone is not compatible with your Treo 750v smartphone. See [Installing third-party applications.](#)



# Regulatory information

---

## FCC Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B computer peripheral, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## RF Safety Exposure

To Radio Frequency Energy (SAR) Radio transmitting devices radiate Radio Frequency (RF) energy during its operation. RF energy can be absorbed into the human body and potentially can cause adverse health effects if excessive levels are absorbed. The unit of measurement for human exposure to RF energy is “Specific Absorption Rate” (SAR).

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC), Industrie Canada (IC), and other agencies around the world have established limits that incorporate a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons using this equipment.

In order to certify this unit for sale in the US, Canada and Europe this unit has been tested for RF exposure compliance at a qualified test laboratory and found to comply with the regulations regarding exposure to RF Energy.

SAR was measured with the unit transmitting at its maximum certified RF power. Often, however, during normal operation the unit will transmit much less than maximum power. Transmit power is controlled automatically and, in general is reduced as you get closer to a cellular base station. This reduction in transmit power will result in a lower RF energy exposure and resulting SAR value.

## FCC RF Safety Statement

In order to comply with FCC RF exposure safety guidelines, users MUST use one of the following types of bodyworn accessories.

- A Palm® brand body-worn accessory that has been tested for SAR compliance and is intended for use with this product.
- An accessory that contains NO metal (snaps, clips, etc) and provides AT LEAST 1.5 cm of separation between the users body and the unit.

Do NOT use the device in a manner such that it is in direct contact with the body (i.e. on the lap or in a breast pocket). Such use will likely exceed FCC RF safety exposure limits. See [www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/](http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/) for more information on RF exposure safety.

## Responsible party

(North America)  
Palm Inc.  
950 W. Maude Ave.  
Sunnyvale, CA 94085  
USA  
[www.palm.com](http://www.palm.com)

(Europe)  
Roy Bedlow  
Buckhurst Court  
London Road  
Wokingham, Berkshire RG40 1PA,  
UK

## Declaration of Conformity

We, Palm Inc., declare under sole responsibility that the product:

Model name: Treo 750v/Treo 750

Description: PDA phone

Is in conformity with the following standards and/or other normative document:

- ETSI EN 301 511
- ETSI EN 301 908-1
- ETSI EN 301 908-2
- ETSI EN 300 328
- ETSI EN 301 489-1/-7/-17/-24
- EN60950-1
- EN 50360

We hereby declare that the above named product is in conformance to all essential requirements of the RTTE Directive 1999/5/EC.

The conformity assessment procedure referred to Article 10 and detailed in Annex IV of directive 1999/5/EC has been related to Articles:

- R&TTE Article 3.1 (a) Health and Safety
- R&TTE Article 3.1 (b) EMC
- R&TTE Article 3.2 Spectrum Usage

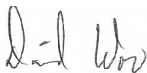
Identification mark 0984 (notified body)CE.

This identification mark is permanently provided on the device label.

The technical documentation relevant to the above equipment will be held at:

Palm Inc.  
950 W Maude Avenue  
Sunnyvale, CA. 94085  
U.S.A.

Person responsible for making this declaration:



David Woo/Sr Compliance Engineer  
Sunnyvale/August 31, 2006



## Antenna Care/Unauthorized Modifications

Use only the supplied integral antenna. Unauthorized antenna modifications or attachments could damage the unit and may violate FCC regulations. Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## Potentially Unsafe Areas

Potentially explosive atmospheres: Turn off your smartphone when you are in any areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as fueling areas (gas or petrol stations) or storage facilities for fuel or chemicals.

## Declaration of Conformity

Treo 750v

Palm declares that the above model of Treo 750v smartphone is compliant with the regulations below. The declaration applies to the smartphone and its associated accessories (power supply, headset, and USB cable) where applicable.

Maximum Scaled SAR Values (W/kg) FCC				
Band	GSM 850	GSM 1900	WCDMA 850	WCDMA 1900
Head SAR (Held to Ear)	(W/Kg) 0.866	(W/Kg) 0.588	(W/Kg) 0.569	(W/Kg) 1.16
Body SAR (Worn)	(W/Kg) 0.532	(W/Kg) 0.155	(W/Kg) 0.231	(W/Kg) 0.164



Maximum SAR Values (W/kg) CE			
Band	GSM 900	PCS 1800	WCDMA 2100
Head SAR	0.741	0.244	0.447

FCC OET Bulletin 65 Supplement C

Safety: EN 60950: 2000 (Jan-2000)

Radiated Emissions: EN 55022

FCC ID: 08F-KITT

IC ID: 3905A-KITT

### Using TTY

A TTY (also known as TDD or text telephone) is a telecommunications device that allows people who are deaf or hard of hearing, or who have speech or language disabilities, to communicate by telephone.

Your Palm Treo 750v smartphone is compatible with select TTY devices. You can connect a TTY/TDD machine to your smartphone through the headset jack, but you cannot use your headset jack with a headset or hands-free kit while this mode is enabled. Please check with the manufacturer of your TTY device for connectivity information and to ensure that the TTY device supports digital wireless transmission.

To use TTY, you may need to make additional arrangements with your network operator. Please contact your network operator's customer service department for more information.

- 1 Press the Start button and select Settings.
- 2 Select Personal, and then select Phone.
- 3 Select Phone.
- 4 Select the TTY/TDD list, and then select either Default mode, VCO mode, or HCO mode.
- 5 Press OK. A keyboard icon appears at the top of your Today screen whenever TTY is enabled.

To disable TTY, repeat steps 1 and 2.

### Operational Warnings

**IMPORTANT INFORMATION ON SAFE AND EFFICIENT OPERATION.** Read this information before using your integrated multi-service portable radio.

For the safe and efficient operation of your radio, observe these guidelines:

#### **Potentially Unsafe Areas/Potentially explosive**

**atmospheres** Obey all signs and instructions regarding turning off your smartphone. In particular, turn off your smartphone when you are in any areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere, such as

fueling areas (gas or petrol stations, below deck on boats), storage facilities for fuel or chemicals, blasting areas and areas near electrical blasting caps, and areas where there are chemicals or particles (such as metal powders, grains, and dust) in the air.

**Interference to Medical and Personal Electronic Devices** Most but not all electronic equipment is shielded from RF signals and certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your smartphone.

**Pacemakers** The Health Industry Manufacturers Association recommends that a minimum separation of six inches (6") be maintained between a smartphone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by the recommendations of Wireless Technology Research.

Persons with pacemakers should:

- ALWAYS keep the smartphone more than six inches from their pacemaker when the smartphone is turned ON.
- Not carry the smartphone in a breast pocket.
- Use the ear opposite the pacemaker to minimize the potential for interference.
- Turn the smartphone OFF immediately if you have any reason to suspect that interference is taking place.

**Audio Safety** Some hearing aids may be affected by some digital smartphones. You may want to consult your doctor in the event of you experience interference with your hearing aid while using your smartphone. When using the speakerphone feature, it is recommended that you place your smartphone at a safe distance from your ear.

**Other Medical Devices** If you use any other personal medical device, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information.

Turn your smartphone OFF in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

**Interference to Other Electronic Devices** RF energy may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic operating and entertainment systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or representative to determine if these systems are adequately shielded from external RF energy. Also check with the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to the vehicle.

**Repetitive Motion Injuries** When using the keyboard or playing games on your smartphone, you may experience discomfort in your neck, shoulders, hands, arms, or other parts of the body. To avoid any injury, such as tendonitis, carpal tunnel syndrome, or other musculoskeletal disorder, make sure to take necessary breaks from use, take longer rests (such as several hours) if discomfort or tiring begins, and see a doctor if discomfort persists.

**Blackouts and Seizures** Blinking lights, such as those experienced with television or playing video games, may cause some people to experience blackout or seizure, even if never experienced before. In the event a smartphone user should experience any disorientation, loss of awareness, convulsion, eye or muscle twitching or other involuntary movements, stop use immediately and consult a doctor. Individuals with personal or family history of such events should consult a doctor before using the device. To limit the possibility of such symptoms, wherever possible every hour take a minimum of 15 minutes, use in a well lighted area, view the screen from the farthest distance and avoid exposure to blinking lights if you are tired.

**Aircraft** While in aircraft, follow all instructions regarding the operation of your smartphone. Use of your smartphone while on board on aircraft must be done in accordance in compliance with airline instructions and regulations.

**Vehicles with Air Bags** Your smartphone should not be placed in a position that would affect the operation of air bag deployment or in a position that, should the air bag inflate, could propel the smartphone. Air bags will inflate with great force and care should be taken to protect within a vehicle that has air bags.

**Battery** Your smartphone includes an internal lithium ion battery. Please note that use of certain data applications can result in heavy battery use and may require frequent battery charging. Any disposal of the smartphone must comply with laws and regulations pertaining to lithium ion batteries.

## Driving Safety Tips Overview

Always obey all laws and regulations on the use of smartphones in your driving area.

**Safety** — Your most important call. The Wireless Industry reminds you to use your smartphone safely when driving.

- 1 Get to know your smartphone and its features, such as speed-dial and redial.
- 2 When available, use a hands-free device.
- 3 Position your smartphone within easy reach.
- 4 Let the person you are speaking to know you are driving; if necessary, suspend the call in heavy traffic or hazardous weather conditions.
- 5 Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving.
- 6 Dial sensibly and assess the traffic; if possible, place calls when you are not moving or before pulling into traffic.
- 7 Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations that may divert your attention from the road.
- 8 Dial 9-1-1 to report serious emergencies -it's free from your smartphone!
- 9 Use your smartphone to help others in emergencies.
- 10 Call roadside assistance or a special non-emergency wireless number when necessary.

## Driving Safety Tips Details

- 1 Get to know your smartphone and its features such as speed-dial and redial. Carefully read your instruction manual and learn to take advantage of valuable features most smartphones offer including, automatic redial and memory dial-most smartphones can store up to 99 numbers in memory dial. Also, work to memorize the smartphone keypad so you can use the speed-dial function without taking your attention off the road.
- 2 When available, use a hands-free device. A number of hands-free smartphone accessories are readily available today. Whether you choose an installed mounted device for your smartphone or a

speaker phone accessory, take advantage of these devices if available to you.

- 3 Position your smartphone within easy reach. Make sure you place your smartphone within easy reach and where you can grab it without removing your eyes from the road. If you get an incoming call at an inconvenient time, let your voice mail answer it for you.
- 4 Suspend conversations during hazardous driving conditions or situations. Let the person you are speaking to know you are driving; if necessary, suspend the call in heavy traffic or hazardous weather conditions. Rain, sleet, snow and ice can be hazardous, but so is heavy traffic. As a driver, your first responsibility is to pay attention to the road.
- 5 Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving. If you are reading an address book or business card while driving a car, or writing a "to do" list, then you are not watching where you are going. It's common sense. Don't get caught in a dangerous situation because you are reading or writing and not paying attention to the road or nearby vehicles.
- 6 Dial sensibly and assess the traffic; if possible, place calls when you are not moving or before pulling into traffic. Try to plan your calls before you begin your trip, or attempt to coincide your calls with times you may be stopped at a stop sign, red light or otherwise stationary. But if you need to dial while driving, follow this simple tip-dial only a few numbers, check the road and your mirrors, then continue.
- 7 Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations that may be distracting. Stressful or emotional conversations and driving do not mix-they are distracting and even dangerous when you are behind the wheel. Make people you are talking with aware you are driving and if necessary, suspend phone conversations which have the potential to divert your attention from the road.
- 8 Use your smartphone to call for help. Your smartphone is one of the greatest tools you can own to protect yourself and your family in dangerous situations-with your smartphone at your side, help is only three numbers away. Dial 9-1-1 in the case of fire,

traffic accident, road hazard, or medical emergencies. Remember, 9-1-1 is a free call on your smartphone!

- 9 Use your smartphone to help others in emergencies. Your smartphone provides you a perfect opportunity to be a "good Samaritan" in your community. If you see an auto accident, crime in progress, or other serious emergency where lives are in danger, call 9-1-1, as you would want others to do for you.
- 10 Call roadside assistance or a special wireless non-emergency assistance number when necessary. Certain situations you encounter while driving may require attention, but are not urgent enough to merit a call to 9-1-1. But you can still use your smartphone to lend a hand. If you see a broken-down vehicle posing no serious hazard, a broken traffic signal, a minor traffic accident where no one appears injured, or a vehicle you know to be stolen, call roadside assistance or other special non-emergency wireless number.

## NOTICE FOR CONSUMERS WITH HEARING DISABILITIES

**Digital Wireless Phones to be Compatible with Hearing Aids** On July 10, 2003, the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) modified the exemption for wireless phones under the Hearing Aid Compatibility Act of 1988. This means that wireless phone manufacturers and service providers must make digital wireless phones accessible to individuals who use hearing aids.

For more information, please go to the FCC's Consumer Alert on accessibility of digital wireless phones at <http://www.fcc.gov/cgb/consumerfacts/accessiblwireless.html>.

Wireless telephones are hand-held phones with built-in antennas, often called cell, mobile, or PCS phones. These phones are popular with callers because they can be carried easily from place to place.

Wireless telephones are two-way radios. When you talk into a wireless telephone, it picks up your voice and converts the sound to radio frequency energy (or radio waves). The radio waves travel through the air until they reach a receiver at a nearby base station. The base station then sends your call through the telephone network until it reaches the person you are calling.

### Making a Phone Call



### Receiving a Phone Call

When you receive a call on your wireless telephone, the message travels through the telephone network until it reaches a base station close to your wireless phone. Then the base station sends out radio waves that are detected by a receiver in your telephone, where the signals are changed back into the sound of a voice.

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) each regulate wireless telephones. FCC ensures that all wireless phones sold in the United States follow safety guidelines that limit radio frequency (RF) energy. FDA monitors the health effects of wireless telephones. Each agency has the authority to take action if a wireless phone produces hazardous levels of RF energy.

FDA derives its authority to regulate wireless telephones from the Radiation Control provisions of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (originally enacted as the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968). (<http://www.fda.gov/cdrh/comp/eprc.html>).

FCC derives its authority to regulate wireless telephones from the National Environmental Policy Act of 1969 (NEPA) and the Telecommunications Act of 1996 (<http://www.fcc.gov/telecom.html>). Updated 7/16/2003

**Hands-Free Capability** All CTIA Certified portable products provide the consumer with a toll-free number for the purchase of a compatible hands-free device. 1-800-881-7256

## STATIC ELECTRICITY, ESD, AND YOUR PALM DEVICE

Electrostatic discharge (ESD) can cause damage to electronic devices if discharged into the device, so you should take steps to avoid such an occurrence.

**Description of ESD** Static electricity is an electrical charge caused by the buildup of excess electrons on the surface of a material. To most people, static electricity and ESD are nothing more than annoyances. For example, after walking over a carpet while scuffing your feet, building up electrons on your body, you may get a shock—the discharge event—when you touch a metal doorknob. This little shock discharges the built-up static electricity.

**ESD-susceptible equipment** Even a small amount of ESD can harm circuitry, so when working with electronic devices, take measures to help protect your electronic devices, including your Palm® device, from ESD harm. While Palm has built protections against ESD into its products, ESD unfortunately exists and, unless neutralized, could build up to levels that could harm your equipment. Any electronic device that contains an external entry point for plugging in anything from cables to docking stations is susceptible to entry of ESD. Devices that you carry with you, such as your Palm device, build up ESD in a unique way because the static electricity that may have built up on your body is automatically passed to the device. Then, when the device is connected to another device such as a docking station, a discharge event can occur.

**Precautions against ESD** Make sure to discharge any built-up static electricity from yourself and your electronic devices *before* touching an electronic device or connecting one device to another. The recommendation from Palm is that you take this precaution before connecting your Palm device to your computer, placing the device in a cradle, or connecting it to any other device. You can do this in many ways, including the following:

- Ground yourself when you're holding your device by simultaneously touching a metal surface that is at earth ground. For example, if your computer has a metal case and is plugged into a standard three-prong grounded outlet, touching the case should discharge the ESD on your body.
- Increase the relative humidity of your environment.
- Install ESD-specific prevention items, such as grounding mats.

**Conditions that enhance ESD occurrences** Conditions that can contribute to the buildup of static electricity in the environment include the following:

- Low relative humidity.

- Material type (The type of material gathering the charge. For example, synthetics are more prone to static buildup than natural fibers like cotton.)
- The rapidity with which you touch, connect, or disconnect electronic devices.

While you should always take appropriate precautions to discharge electricity, if you are in an environment where you notice ESD events, you may want to take extra precautions to protect your electronic equipment against ESD.

**Precaution against hearing loss** Protect your hearing. Listening to this device at full volume for a long period of time can damage your hearing.

A pleine puissance, l'écoute prolongée du baladeur peut endommager l'oreille de l'utilisateur. Consultez notre site web [www.palm.com/fr](http://www.palm.com/fr) pour plus d'informations.



**Waste disposal** Please recycle appropriately. For appropriate recycling and disposal instructions please visit: [www.palm.com/environment](http://www.palm.com/environment).



### Précautions d'usage de votre téléphone mobile

Le taux de DAS(1) (Débit d'Absorption Spécifique) de votre Palm Treo 750v smartphone est 0.741 w/kg.

**Conseils d'utilisation pour réduire le niveau d'exposition aux rayonnements** : Utiliser le plus souvent possible les kits piétons (oreillettes), notamment en cas d'usage fréquent ou prolongé du

téléphone mobile. Ils apportent en outre un plus grand confort d'utilisation.

Eloigner le téléphone mobile de certaines zones sensibles telles que le ventre chez les femmes enceintes ou le bas-ventre chez les adolescents, plus particulièrement lors d'une communication.

Utiliser votre téléphone mobile dans de bonnes conditions de réception. Celle-ci est indiquée sur l'écran de votre téléphone par la matérialisation de barrettes. A partir de 3 ou 4 barrettes, la réception est de bonne qualité pour passer vos communications. Ce n'est pas toujours le cas dans certaines zones ou situations, notamment les parking souterrains, les ascenseurs, en train ou en voiture ou tout simplement dans un secteur mal couvert par le réseau.

**Mesures touchant à la sécurité** : Dans certains lieux ou situations, tels que les avions, les hôpitaux, les stations-service et les garages professionnels, l'usage du téléphone est interdit. Il est donc impératif de respecter strictement les consignes de sécurité propres à chacune de ces situations et d'éteindre votre téléphone lorsque cela est requis.

Par ailleurs pour éviter les risques d'interférences, les personnes porteuses d'implants électroniques (stimulateurs cardiaques, pompes à insuline, neurostimulateurs...) doivent conserver une distance de 15 cm entre le mobile et l'implant et ne l'utiliser que du côté opposé au côté où celui-ci est situé.

Téléphoner en conduisant, même avec des équipements qui ne sont pas interdits par la réglementation, est dangereux car il augmente potentiellement le risque d'accident provenant de la distraction créée par la conversation elle-même. Aussi, est-il recommandé de ne jamais téléphoner en conduisant et de considérer que l'utilisation d'un kit mains-libres n'est pas une solution.

(1) Valeur DAS la plus élevée pour ce modèle de téléphone et pour une utilisation à l'oreille, communiquée par le constructeur. Le DAS, exprimé en w/kg, quantifie le niveau d'exposition aux ondes électromagnétiques et permet de vérifier la conformité des mobiles à la réglementation française et européenne qui impose que celui-ci soit inférieur à 2w/kg.

## Specifications

Radio	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Dual mode GSM/UMTS phone</li><li>• GSM 850/900/1800/1900 quad band</li><li>• UMTS 850/1900/2100 tri-band</li><li>• GPRS Multi-slot Class 10, Class B</li><li>• EDGE up to 59kbps per time-slot</li><li>• UMTS PS data up to 384kbps DL</li></ul>
Phone features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Personal speakerphone</li><li>• Hands-free headset jack (2.5 mm, 3-barrel connector)</li><li>• Microphone mute option</li><li>• TTY compatible</li></ul>
Processor technology	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Samsung processor—300MHz</li></ul>
Expansion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• miniSD card slot</li></ul>
Battery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Rechargeable Lithium Ion</li><li>• 1200mAh power</li><li>• Removable for replacement</li><li>• 3 hours full charge time</li></ul>
Operating system	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Windows Mobile Edition 5.2. (Phone Edition)</li></ul>
Camera	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Still image capture resolution:1280 x 1024, 1.3 megapixel</li><li>• 2x digital zoom</li></ul>

Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 112.9mm x 59.3mm x 21.3mm (4.44 in x 2.34 in. x 0.84 in.)</li></ul>
Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 154 grams (5.4 ounces)</li></ul>
Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Infrared (1.0 compliant)</li><li>• Bluetooth® wireless technology (1.2 compliant)</li></ul>
Display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Touch-sensitive LCD screen (includes stylus)</li><li>• 65,536 colors (16-bit color)</li><li>• Resolution: 240 x 240</li><li>• User-adjustable brightness</li></ul>
Keyboard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Built-in QWERTY keyboard plus 5-way navigator</li><li>• Backlight for low lighting conditions</li></ul>



Included software	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Today/Phone (includes Speed Dial and Dial Pad)</li> <li>• Messaging (text, multimedia, and email)</li> <li>• Internet Explorer Mobile (web browser)</li> <li>• Camera</li> <li>• Pictures &amp; Videos</li> <li>• Windows Media Player Mobile</li> <li>• File Explorer</li> <li>• Contacts</li> <li>• Calendar</li> <li>• Tasks</li> <li>• Notes</li> <li>• Calculator</li> <li>• ActiveSync®</li> <li>• Excel Mobile</li> <li>• Word Mobile</li> <li>• PowerPoint Mobile</li> <li>• Voice Command</li> <li>• Quick Tour</li> <li>• Search</li> <li>• Terminal Services</li> <li>• PicseL PDF Viewer</li> <li>• Bluetooth Plug-in</li> </ul>
System requirements	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Windows 2000 or XP (later versions may also be supported)</li> <li>• 32MB of available memory (RAM)</li> <li>• 170MB of free hard disk space</li> <li>• Available USB port</li> </ul>
Operating and storage temperature range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0°C to 40°C (32°F to 104°F) 5% to 90% RH</li> </ul>



# Index

---

## SYMBOLS

! on battery icon 10

## NUMERICs

112 calls 35, 210

1st day of week option 156

3GP files 140

3GPP files 102, 136

3GPP2 files 102, 136

5-way navigator 5, 17, 19,  
244

911 calls 35, 210

## A

AC charger 9, 10

accented characters 26, 27  
accessing

ActiveSync 76

alternate characters 26

applications 28, 206

calculator 198

Calendar application 151

Contacts application 149

Dial Pad 38

File Explorer 186

information 29, 217

Internet Explorer 115

menu items 20, 21, 22

Messaging app 101

Notes application 160

on-device documentation  
247

online address books 93

online forums 247

options in lists 22

Outlook folders 236

Palm online support 247

PDF Viewer 165

Phone Settings screen 14

Pictures & Videos

application 136

Quick Tour 247

remote files 221

speed-dial buttons 35

spreadsheet templates  
174

Streaming Media

application 142

Tasks application 157

Tasks entry bar 159

the Internet 220, 231

Today screen 12, 29

web pages 115, 117, 119,  
241

Wireless Manager 33

accounts

conference calls and 45  
customer service support  
for 247

missing phone numbers  
and 14

preventing unauthorized  
use of 210, 217

removing email 89

setting up email 87

troubleshooting 234, 239

Accounts tab 87, 92, 94

action keys 5, 20

actions 20, 203

activating items on screen 20

active call info 42

active calls. *See* phone calls

ActiveSync

defined 249

installing 68, 74

opening 76

receiving email and 91

synchronizing with 67, 68,  
76, 224, 234

troubleshooting 224,  
234–239

ActiveSync icon 76, 79, 249

ActiveSync Plug-in for

Bluetooth 79

- Add a new VPN server
  - connection option 221
- Add Contact prompt 43
- Add Favorite dialog box 118
- Add Media command 104
- Add Picture command 104
- Add Recipient command 101
- Add Server Source command 71
- Add Sound command 104
- Add to Contacts command 107
- Add to Favorites command 118
- Add to Personal Address Book command 236
- adding
  - a second call 44
  - applications 206
  - appointments 152, 154
  - attachments to email 90, 97, 186
  - bookmarks 117
  - bulleted or numbered lists 169
  - caller ID pictures 149
  - connections 220, 221
  - contacts 43, 57, 149
  - document templates 167
  - expansion cards 193
  - files to playlists 144
  - folders 170
  - notes 149, 160, 161
  - online address book 93
  - passkeys 53, 123, 124
  - signatures 94, 111
  - speed-dial buttons 48
  - spreadsheets 172
  - tasks 157
  - untimed events 153, 154
- address book 93, 96, 151, 236
- Address List Lookup 185
- address messaging options 96
- Address tab 93, 96
- addresses
  - adding 149
  - checking for 96
  - copying 236
  - entering email 89, 96
  - entering web 30, 116
  - looking up corporate 185
  - multiple recipients and 101
  - selecting 20, 242
  - synchronizing 236
- adjusting screen brightness 204
- Advanced tab (Power Settings) 218
- advancing slides 171, 172
- After calls from numbers... option 57
- Agenda View (calendar) 152
- alarm clock 215
- alarm sounds 216
- alarms
  - adding 153, 158
  - setting 204, 215
  - turning on and off 203
- Alarms tab 216
- albums 136
- alert tones. *See* alarms; ringtones
- aligning the screen 205
- alignment settings
  - documents 169
  - spreadsheets 172
- Allow cookies check box 120
- Allow USB connections check box 235
- Alt key 24, 249
- alternate characters 26, 27
- alternate characters list 26, 27

AMR files 102  
animation 139, 171, 172  
anniversaries 154  
Answer button 39  
answering the phone 39, 44  
antenna 257  
Appearance tab 201, 205  
application icons 28, 206  
applications  
    *See also* third-party  
        applications  
    associating with buttons  
        206  
    battery life and 11  
    caution for hard resets and  
        225  
    choosing menu items in  
        21, 22  
    closing 28, 218  
    copying 196  
    customizing 206–210  
    deleting 190, 245  
    displaying 28, 218  
    downloading 187, 188  
    error reporting for 217  
    included with smartphone  
        265  
    installing 187–188, 243,  
        244  
    losing information in 226  
    moving through 18, 19  
    moving to expansion cards  
        196  
    opening 28, 195, 206  
    phone calls and 42, 43  
    reinstalling 224, 226  
    running from expansion  
        cards 195, 245  
    running multiple 28  
    selecting 28  
    storing 245  
    synchronizing information  
        in 69, 81  
    troubleshooting 226, 228  
    turning sounds on or off  
        for 203  
    viewing memory usage for  
        218  
Appointment tab 152  
appointments  
    adding 152  
    appearing in wrong time  
        slots 237  
    deleting 156  
    hiding 155  
    marking as private 155  
    reminders for 153  
    scheduling repeating 154  
        viewing 152  
Appointments tab 156  
Area code option 151  
arrow icons 17  
ascending sort order 179  
ASF files 136  
Assign a program list 207  
attachments  
    adding 90, 97, 186  
    downloading 91, 92  
    embedded objects in 92  
    internal memory and 245  
    opening 91  
    storing 92, 96  
    troubleshooting 240  
Attendees option 154  
audio 39, 135, 140, 258  
auto-completion options 209  
AutoCorrect command 139  
Autofill option 177  
AutoFilter command 179  
AutoFilter settings  
    (spreadsheets) 173  
auto-keyguard feature 210,  
    211  
Auto-Keyguard list 211  
Automatically download  
    MMS messages check  
    box 110

auto-off interval 249  
available memory 218  
available storage space 218

## B

back view (smartphone) 6  
backgrounds 131, 138, 145, 201  
backing up information 65, 223, 226  
backlight (keyboard) 24, 219  
backlight shut-off interval 25  
Backspace key 20, 24, 26  
backup and restore  
    application 79  
backup utilities 223, 226, 239  
backups, restoring 226, 239  
battery  
    Bluetooth connections  
        and 124  
    charging 9–10  
    conserving power for 219  
    disposing of 227, 259  
    inserting 8  
    maximizing life of 11–12  
    purchasing 9  
    removing 225, 227  
    replacing 226–227

    specifications for 263  
    viewing remaining power  
        for 218  
    viewing status of 63  
battery door 8  
battery door release 6  
battery icon 10  
Battery Power tab 25  
battery status icons 63  
Battery tab 218  
Beam File command 191  
Beam tab 193  
Beam... command 192  
beaming 12, 186, 191–193, 249  
birthdays 154  
blank screens 229  
Block incoming calls list 58  
Block outgoing calls list 58  
blocking phone calls 57  
Bluetooth connections  
    battery level and 124  
    battery life and 11  
    checking status of 53  
    communicating over 51  
    hands-free devices and  
        52, 54  
    overview 121  
    synchronizing over 79

Bluetooth devices  
    beaming to 192  
    connecting to 51–53, 121–124  
    creating partnerships for 123  
    discovery setting for 125  
    phone calls and 54  
    receiving information over 122, 124  
    sending information over 122, 124  
    troubleshooting 232  
Bluetooth icon 53, 63, 122  
Bluetooth Plug-in 122, 126  
Bluetooth Settings screen 122–125  
Bluetooth wireless  
    technology 113, 191, 249  
BMP files 136  
Bold option 168  
bookmarks 117  
    *See also* favorites  
border highlight 19  
borders 172  
brightness, adjusting 132, 133, 204  
browsing files and folders 186, 197

- browsing the web. *See* web browsing
- built-in applications 190, 265
- built-in camera. *See* camera
- bulleted lists 169
- bullets 166
- Burst mode 132
- button settings 145
- buttons
  - assigning to media files 145
  - assigning voice commands to 207
  - associating with applications 206
  - creating speed-dial 48
  - disabling 211
  - editing speed-dial 49
  - opening menus and 20
  - reassigning 206–207
  - selecting or activating 19
  - showing voicemail 49
  - turning sounds on or off for 203
- Buttons icon 207
- Buttons list 207
- Buttons screen 206
- Buttons tab (Options) 145

## C

- CAB files 188
- calculations 176, 197
- Calculator application 197
- calculator buttons 198
- Calculator icon 198
- calendar
  - adding items to 153, 154
  - displaying 151
  - removing events 156
  - setting alarms for 153
  - setting options for 156
  - unavailable slots on 155
- Calendar application
  - adding contacts and 149
  - customizing 156–157
  - managing schedules with 152–156
  - selecting views 152
  - starting 151
  - untimed events in 153
- calendar options 156–157
- Calendar views 152, 156, 157
- call forwarding 46
- call forwarding icon 47
- Call Log 38, 47
- Call Sender command 107
- Call Timers command 47

- call waiting 44
- call-barring password 57
- caller ID applications 243
- caller ID blocking 43
- caller ID pictures 131, 149
- caller IDs 58
- calling plans 47
- call-waiting notifications 59
- camcorder icon 133
- camera
  - battery life and 11
  - capturing videos with 132–133
  - specifications for 263
  - taking pictures 131–132
  - troubleshooting 242
- Camera icon 131
- camera lens 6
- Camera Preview Mode 243
- camera settings 133–135
- Camera tab 134
- Cancel Bluetooth command 54
- Cancel Mute command 42
- capitalization 25, 210
- Capitalize first letter of sentence check box 210
- Caps Lock icon 25
- Caps Lock mode 25

- captions 103, 104
- cascading menus 22
- case-sensitive searching 167, 181
- categories
  - contacts 149
  - events 155
  - playlists 143
  - tasks 158, 159
- cell patterns (spreadsheets) 173
- cell phones. *See* wireless phones
- certificates 115, 216
- Certificates icon 216
- Certificates screen 216
- changes, undoing 139
- changing
  - alarm sounds 216
  - color themes 201, 205
  - connections 220
  - contacts 150
  - date and time settings 214
  - email accounts 89
  - information 181
  - picture or video resolution 132, 133, 242
  - PIN numbers 213
  - speed-dial buttons 49
  - text 167
  - text size 204
- character entry 27
- character sets 120
- characters
  - capitalizing 25, 210
  - entering 24, 25, 176, 209
  - phone calls and 49
  - scrolling 18
  - text messages and 101, 102
  - typing alternate 26
- charge indicator 5, 10
- charger cable 10
- charging
  - smartphone 9, 11
  - smartphone battery 9–10
- charging status 10
- Chart command 180
- chart options 180
- charts 173, 180
- Chat icon 108
- chat sessions 107, 111
- Chat tab 111
- check boxes 19
- chronological list of calls 38
- Clear Cookies button 121
- Clear History button 120
- Clear Now Playing command 144
- Clear Type tab 204
- clearing web links 120
- Clock & Alarms icon 215
- Clock & Alarms Settings
  - screen 214, 216
- closing
  - applications 28, 218
  - menus 22
  - notification messages 106
  - screens 19
- color settings 243
- color themes 201, 205
- command button 208, 209
- commands 20, 208
  - See also* menus; voice commands
- company lists 33
- company names 38, 150
- comparisons 180
- completed tasks 158
- compliance statement 257
- components (Treo smartphone) 1
- compressed files 187
- computers
  - connecting to 77



- enabling dial-up
  - networking for 126
  - installing from 189
  - reinstalling desktop
    - software on 224
  - synchronizing with 81, 82
  - system requirements 75
  - viewing videos and pictures on 139
- Conference button 46
- conference calls 45
- confidential events 155
- Confidential option 155
- configurations
  - restoring 225
  - troubleshooting 231
- Configure Server command 241
- configuring
  - data services 231
  - mail servers 241
  - TTY devices 56
- Confirm message deletions
  - check box 110
- confirmation messages 112
- Connect command 221
- Connect via Bluetooth
  - command 80
- Connect via IR command 81
- connecting
  - charger cable 10
  - headsets 50
  - smartphone to PCs 77
  - to a headset 124
  - to Bluetooth devices 51–53, 121–124
  - to hands-free car kits 51, 124
  - to mobile networks 230
  - to service providers 220
  - to the Internet 126, 220, 231
  - to TTY devices 56
  - to VPNs 221
  - to web sites 115, 125
- connection icons 222
- Connection Settings
  - command 235
- connections
  - adding 220, 221
  - changing 220
  - displaying 220
  - ending 222
  - losing 232, 234
  - manually starting 221
  - precautions for 261
  - removing Bluetooth 124
  - setting up 220–221
- setting up wireless
  - 125–127
  - timing out 234
  - troubleshooting 229–233, 241
  - trusted devices and 124
- Connections icon 220
- Connections screen 220, 221, 231, 232
- Connections tab 193, 220
- connectivity specs 264
- conserving battery power 219
- contact categories 149
- contacts
  - adding 43, 57, 149
  - addressing messages to 89, 96, 101, 103
  - assigning ringtones to 49, 56, 137, 150
  - changing 150
  - displaying 150
  - linking speed-dial buttons to 48
  - looking up 30, 36, 151
  - making calls to 36
  - personalizing 56
  - removing 150
  - saving information for 43

- selecting communication method for 37
- sending messages to 101, 154
- viewing details list for 37
- Contacts application 149–151
- Contacts list 37, 44, 101, 107, 151
- context-sensitive menus 22
- continuous playback (slides) 172
- cookies 115
- Copy command 119, 138, 168, 196
- copying
  - addresses 236
  - applications 196
  - items in folders 187
  - phone numbers 37, 39, 119
  - pictures and videos 137
  - text 119, 167
- copyrighted items 137
- corporate mail systems 85, 221, 241
- corporate networks 216
- corporate servers 221, 241
- coupling 245
- coverage area 12, 33, 230
- Create chat from messages option 111
- creating
  - appointments 152, 154
  - bookmarks 117
  - bulleted or numbered lists 169
  - caller ID pictures 149
  - connections 220, 221
  - contacts 43, 57, 149
  - documents 165, 166, 167
  - email messages 89
  - folders 170
  - multimedia messages 102
  - notes 160, 161
  - online address book 93
  - partnerships 123
  - passkeys 53, 123, 124
  - playlists 143
  - signatures 94, 111
  - speed-dial buttons 48
  - spreadsheets 172
  - tasks 157
  - templates 107, 167, 174
  - text messages 101
  - untimed events 153, 154
  - video ringtones 137
  - workbooks 174
- credentials 222, 234
- cropping pictures 138
- currency symbols 205
- Currency tab 205
- customer assistance 247
- Customize the playlists...
  - check box 141
- customizing
  - applications 206–210
  - Calendar 156–157
  - camera 133–135
  - chat settings 111
  - Contacts application 151
  - dates and time 214
  - email settings 95
  - Excel Mobile 182
  - format settings 205
  - Internet Explorer Mobile 120–121
  - Media Player Mobile 144
  - Messaging application 110–112
  - network settings 112
  - Notes application 162
  - phone 54–62
  - system settings 214–220
  - system sounds 202
  - tasks 159
  - Today screen 201

voicemail system 49, 55  
Word Mobile 170  
Cut command 137, 168  
cutting. *See* deleting

## D

daily schedules 152  
data 225  
    *See also* information  
data connection icons 222  
data filters 156, 180  
data formats 204  
data service icons 230  
data service providers 220,  
    231, 240  
data services 1, 230, 231  
data transmission speeds 1  
date format settings 205  
Date tab 205  
dates 177, 205, 214  
    *See also* calendar  
Day View 152, 156  
day-planner formats 152  
decimal places 205  
decimal symbols 205  
decompression utility 187  
default document template  
    170  
default format settings 205

Default mode option 162  
Default option 116  
default PINs 212  
Default template option 162  
Default zoom level options  
    210  
defined names  
    (spreadsheets) 178  
delays 34, 231  
Delete Appointment  
    command 156  
Delete Cells command 182  
Delete command 109, 170,  
    182  
Delete Contact command  
    150  
Delete Files button 120  
Delete Task command 159  
Deleted folder 96, 245  
deleting  
    applications 190, 245  
    Bluetooth connections  
        124  
    certificates 217  
    contacts 150  
    directory services 93  
    documents 170  
    email accounts 89  
    events 156

favorites 118  
files 187, 245  
items from libraries 143  
items from playlists 144  
items in folders 186  
messages 96, 109, 110  
notes 162  
partnerships 124, 233  
pictures 139  
speed-dial buttons 50  
tasks 159  
text 20  
web files 120  
workbooks 182  
worksheets 182  
descending sort order 179  
Desktop option 116  
desktop software 224, 249  
    *See also* applications;  
        software  
device names. *See*  
    usernames  
Device Setup Wizard 141  
devices  
    *See also* Bluetooth  
        devices; smartphone  
        battery life and 11  
        beaming to 192  
        compliance for 258

- configuring TTY/TTD 56
- discovering trusted 121, 122, 125
- physically-impaired
  - disabilities and 56
  - radio frequency emissions and 255, 259
  - transferring information from 223
  - troubleshooting 232
- Devices tab 123, 232
- diagnostic information 217
- Dial Lookup field 30
- Dial Lookup list 13
- Dial Pad 37, 38, 39
- dialing 12, 34–37, 38, 49
- dialog boxes 250
- dial-up networking 125, 126
- digit grouping 205
- digital cameras 136
  - See also* camera
- digital certificates 115, 216
- dimmed images 229
- Direct Push Technology 70
- directory service 93, 96
- Disable touchscreen check box 211
- Disconnect Bluetooth
  - command 80
- Disconnect command 222
- discoverable setting 125
- discovering trusted devices
  - 121, 122, 125
- discussion groups 247
- disk space 265
  - See also* memory
- Dismiss button 41
- display formats 204
- Display message on screen
  - check box 204
- display options (web) 116
- display settings 204–206
  - See also* screen
- displaying
  - alternate characters 26
  - animated images 139
  - applications on
    - smartphone 28
  - appointments 152
  - calendar 151
  - contacts 37, 150
  - current connection 220
  - daily schedules 152
  - events 153, 155
  - folder contents 186
  - items in folders 170, 181
  - memory usage 218
  - multimedia messages 107
- notifications 55, 204
- on-device documentation 247
- PDF files 165
- pictures 131, 136, 139
- power settings 218
- Quick Tour documentation 247
- running applications 218
- space on expansion cards 196, 218
- tasks 159
- videos 131, 136, 139
- web pages 115, 116
- wireless settings 219
- DOC files 165
- document file types 165, 171
- documentation 2
- documents
  - See also* Word Mobile application
  - creating 165, 166, 167
  - deleting 170
  - finding and replacing text in 167
  - moving or copying text in 167
  - opening 166
  - organizing 170

- saving 165, 166, 168, 170
- sending 83
- setting margins for 169
- spell-checking 169
- supported features for 166
- unsupported features for 165
- documents list 171
- DOT files 165
- downloading
  - applications 187, 188
  - attachments 91, 92
  - email 72, 90, 91
  - files 118
  - images 119, 139
  - multimedia messages 105, 110
  - Palm-specific information and updates 247
  - pictures 136
  - ringtones 54
  - videos 139, 140
- Downloads favorite 118
- downward-pointing arrows 22
- drained battery 11
- drawing 160
- drivers 224
- driving safety tips 259
- Drop and Answer command 45
- drop-down lists
  - accessing 22
  - exiting 23
  - highlighting in 18, 23
  - scrolling through 18
  - selecting items in 20, 23
- drop-down menus 22
- DUN connections 126–127
  - See also* dial-up networking
- E**
  - earpiece 5, 245
  - echoes 245
  - EDGE connections 250
  - Edit command 138, 150
  - Edit Server Settings screen 71
  - Edit Speed Dial command 49, 50
  - editing. *See* changing
  - electrostatic discharge 261
  - email
    - addressing 89, 96
    - creating 89
    - deleting 96
    - dialing from 39
    - downloading 72, 90, 91
    - entering contacts and 149, 154
    - forwarding 94
    - getting from corporate servers 221, 241
    - getting from Exchange Servers 90
    - internal memory and 245
    - priority settings for 90
    - receiving attachments with 91
    - reply options for 95
    - requirements for 1
    - selecting addresses 20
    - sending 90, 91, 97, 117, 239
    - synchronizing 11, 91, 233, 240, 241
    - troubleshooting 239–241
  - email accounts
    - changing 89
    - deleting 89
    - setting up 87
    - troubleshooting 239

- email applications 242
- E-mail button 91
- email client software 240
- email message icons 108
- embedded images 92
- emergency calls 35, 210
- emoticons 102
- Enable Clear Type check box 204
- Enable fixed dialing check box 61
- Enable local network time check box 215
- encoding options 120
- encryption 115
- End Show command 172
- End User License Agreement 2
- ending
  - active calls 42
  - data connections 222
  - playback 142
  - wireless connections 127
- endnotes 166
- entering
  - alternate characters 26, 27
  - data in spreadsheets 174, 177
  - information 24, 25–26
  - numbers 24, 25
  - owner information 214
  - passkeys 53, 123, 124
  - passwords 71, 88, 213
  - phone numbers 12, 34, 37, 38
  - PINs 212
  - text 209, 210
  - web addresses 30, 116
- Entire column option 182
- Entire row option 182
- entry fields
  - deleting text in 20
  - highlighting in 18, 20
  - moving to 18
  - opening drop-down lists in 23
  - scrolling through 18
- Erase all data? prompt 226
- erasing. *See* deleting
- error messages 202, 238
- error reporting 217
- Error Reporting icon 217
- Error Reporting screen 217
- errors 217, 230, 238
- ESD (electrostatic discharge) 261
- ESMTP option 240
- Even when roaming check box 110
- event categories 155
- event icons 157
- Event list 203
- events
  - creating 153, 154
  - deleting 156
  - filtering 156
  - hiding 155
  - marking as sensitive 154
  - reminders for 153
  - selecting sounds for 203
  - setting notification preferences for 203
- Events check box 202
- Excel files 163
  - See also* Excel Mobile; spreadsheets
- Excel Mobile application
  - customizing 182
  - display settings for 175
  - overview 172
  - searching in 181
  - starting 174
  - supported features 172
  - unsupported features 174
- Excel Mobile icon 174

- Exchange ActiveSync 241, 250, 252
  - Exchange Address Book 236
  - Exchange Server credentials screen 234
  - Exchange Server sync options 72, 234
  - Exchange Servers
    - accessing 151
    - getting email from 90
    - setting up accounts for 71–73
    - synchronizing with 11, 68, 81, 234
    - troubleshooting 241
  - exiting applications 28, 218
  - expanding lists in fields 23
  - expansion card slot 6, 193, 263
  - expansion cards
    - as storage medium 245
    - browsing on 197
    - displaying available space on 196, 218
    - inserting 193–194
    - installing apps on 189
    - moving apps to 196
    - moving information to 170, 181, 196
    - opening items on 195
    - removing 194
    - renaming 197
    - searching on 185, 186
    - storing attachments on 92, 96
    - transferring files to 140, 144, 195, 196
    - types supported 193
  - extensions (phone) 49
  - external power sources 219
  - External Power tab 25
  - Extra Digits button 41, 49
  - Extra Digits text box 49
  - Extract command 46
- F**
- factory settings 145
  - factory-installed applications 190, 265
  - favorites 117–118
    - See also* web pages
  - Favorites button 118
  - Favorites command 118
  - FCC Statement 255
  - features 1
  - Federal Trade Commission website 217
  - feedback 245
  - fields. *See* entry fields
  - File Explorer 185, 186–187, 197
  - File Explorer icon 186
  - file names 168, 170, 185
  - file types
    - displaying 171
    - documents 165
    - Media Player 140
    - multimedia 102
    - pictures 136
    - videos 136
  - files
    - accessing from corporate accounts 221
    - browsing 186
    - decompressing 187
    - deleting 187, 245
    - downloading 118
    - moving 170, 187
    - saving 195
    - searching for 185, 186
    - selecting multiple 187
    - transferring to expansion cards 140, 144, 195, 196
  - Files folder 165
  - Files sync option 165
  - fill series (spreadsheets) 177

- Filter command 150, 156
  - Filter option 159
  - filtering
    - events 156
    - information 150, 179
    - tasks 159
  - filters 156, 180
  - Find Online command 94, 151
  - Find/Replace command 167, 181
  - finding
    - contacts 30, 36, 151
    - information 181
    - text 167
  - firewalls 233
  - 5-way navigator 5, 17, 19, 244
  - fixed dialing 60
  - folder names 170
  - folders
    - accessing Outlook 236
    - adding documents to 168
    - arranging pictures and videos in 138
    - browsing 186, 197
    - creating 118, 170
    - displaying contents 170, 181
    - moving items to 170, 181, 187
    - opening items in 186
    - organizing web favorites in 117, 118
    - sorting contents 170, 181, 186
    - synchronizing messages in 91
  - Font color option 168
  - Font command 168
  - Font option 168
  - fonts 166, 168, 173, 204
  - footers 166
  - footnotes 166
  - forgetting passwords 213
  - format settings 205
  - formats, losing 165
  - formatting
    - charts 180
    - paragraphs and lists 169
    - spreadsheets 172, 178
    - system data 204
    - text 168
  - Formatting toolbar 169
  - forms (web) 117
  - formulas 173, 176, 182
  - forums 247
  - Forward command 94
  - forwarding
    - messages 94, 107
    - phone calls 46
  - freeing memory 190, 238, 244
  - Freeze Panes option 175
  - front view (smartphone) 5
  - full charge (battery) 9
  - Full Screen option 116
  - functions (spreadsheets) 173, 176
- ## G
- games 11
  - getting started 2, 3, 12, 247
  - GIF files 102, 136, 139
  - Global Address List 93, 151
  - Global Address List Lookup 185
  - Glossary 249
  - Go to Slide command 171
  - GPRS connections 250
  - graphics programs 138
- ## H
- Hands Free check box 53, 124, 232
  - hands-free car kit 50, 54, 124
  - hands-free devices



- connecting to 51
  - purchasing 261
  - setting up 50
  - tips for 54, 259
  - troubleshooting 232
  - turning Keyguard on or off for 211
  - hanging indents 169
  - hanging up phone 13, 42
  - hard resets 213, 225
  - hardware 1
  - Hardware buttons check box 203
  - headers 166
  - headset button 51
  - headset jack 5
  - headsets
    - configuring as trusted devices 122
    - connecting 50–51, 124
    - disabling Keyguard and 211
    - troubleshooting 232
  - hearing-impaired 56, 258, 260
  - heat sources 12
  - help 223, 247
  - Help topics 28
  - hiding
    - appointments 155
    - events 155
    - images 116
    - speed-dial buttons 36
    - Tasks entry bar 159
  - highlight 19
  - Highlight option 169
  - highlighting
    - applications 28
    - items in folders 187
    - items on screen 18, 19–20
    - menu items 21, 22
    - options in lists 18, 23
    - text 20, 169
  - Hint tab 214
  - hints (passwords) 214
  - History command 119, 142
  - History list 119, 120
  - Hold button 42
  - home locations 214
  - Home page option 120
  - hypertext links. *See* links
- I**
- icons
    - application 28, 206
    - battery status 10
    - data connections 222
    - data services 230
    - email 108
    - events 157
    - message status 108
    - navigator 17
    - phone status 62
    - signal-strength 33, 220
  - Identification tab 214
  - Ignore with text message command 40
  - image file types 136
  - image files 102, 139, 244
  - images
    - See also* pictures dimmed 229
    - downloading 119
    - hiding web page 116
    - incorrect color settings and 243
    - receiving 92
    - setting background 138, 201
    - troubleshooting web page 242
  - IMAP accounts 87, 92
  - inactivity 132, 218
  - Inbox 18, 89, 91, 108
  - Inbox application 85, 89, 93

- Include file attachments
    - check box 92
  - incorrect passwords 213
  - Indentation setting 169
  - indented lists 166
  - indenting text 169
  - indicator light 5, 10, 33
  - information
    - accessing 29, 217
    - backing up 65, 223, 226
    - changing 181
    - entering 24, 25–26
    - erasing all 233
    - filtering 150, 179
    - losing 165, 225
    - moving 170, 181, 196
    - protecting 210–214
    - removing battery and 227
    - restoring 225, 226
    - searching for 167, 181, 185–186
    - sharing 191
    - sorting 179
    - storing 193, 244, 245
    - synchronizing 68, 69, 233
    - transferring 65, 223
    - updating 65
  - infrared port. *See* IR port
  - infrared transmissions 80, 250
  - Input icon 209
  - input options 24, 209
  - Input screen 209
  - inserting expansion cards 193–194
  - installation, troubleshooting 226, 228, 244
  - installing
    - ActiveSync 68, 74
    - applications 187–188, 243, 244
    - bonus software 187
    - SIM smartcards 8–14
    - synchronization software 75
    - VPN clients 221
    - Windows drivers 224
  - instant messaging applications 243
  - internal memory. *See* memory
  - Internet 126, 220, 231
    - See also* web browsing; websites
  - Internet Connection Speed option 145
  - Internet Explorer Mobile
    - browsing with 115–119
    - closing 117
    - customizing 120–121
    - installing from 188
    - scrolling in 18
    - starting 115
    - unsupported elements for 115, 241
  - IR connections 192
  - IR port 6, 80, 191, 250
  - ISP mail systems 85, 87
  - ISP settings 220
  - ISPs (Internet Service Providers) 220, 240
  - Italics option 168
  - Items tab 201
- J**
- JavaScript 115
  - JPEG files 102
  - JPG files 136
- K**
- keyboard
    - accessing alternate characters on 26
    - dialing from 34
    - entering information from 25–26, 210

- locking 211
- pressing keys on 24
- scrolling with 18
- selecting menu items
  - from 22
- setting key combinations for 207
- specifications for 264
- troubleshooting 244
- keyboard backlight 24, 219
- keyboard icon 24
- Keyguard 211
- Keyguard icon 211
- Known Caller option 55

## L

- language-impaired 56
- leading zeros 205
- left action key 20, 152
- Legacy Pocket Word files 166
- libraries (media) 142
- Library command 141
- Library list 141
- Library screen 141, 145
- Library tab 145
- lightening bolt 10
- Li-Ion battery 250
  - See also battery

- links
  - clearing web 120
  - internal memory and 245
  - media files and 142
  - messages and 108, 117
  - selecting 19, 116
  - troubleshooting 242
- list separators 205
- List setting 169
- Listen button 41
- listening to
  - media files 140
  - voicemail messages 41
- lists
  - accessing 22
  - creating 166, 169
  - displaying alternate characters and 26
  - exiting 23
  - formatting 169
  - highlighting in 18, 23
  - navigating web page 117
  - scrolling through 18
  - selecting items in 20, 23
- Lithium Ion battery 250
  - See also battery
- locating
  - contacts 30, 36, 151
  - information 181

- location-specific information 204, 214
- Lock icon 116, 137, 213
- Lock screen 213
- locking
  - SIM smartcards 212
  - spreadsheet rows and columns 175
  - the keyboard 211
  - the screen 211
  - Treo smartphone 213
- logging in to
  - corporate servers 221
  - networks 216
- looking up contacts 30, 36, 151
- lookup feature 185
- losing
  - connections 232, 234
  - information 165, 225
  - passwords 213
  - Treo smartphone 79, 214
- low coverage areas 230
- low lighting conditions 24
- lowercase letters 25

## M

- magnet 7

- magnification. *See* zoom settings
- mail servers **221, 241**
- Main tab **218**
- Make the device discoverable check box **122**
- Make this device discoverable setting **125**
- Manage existing connections option **220, 221**
- Manage Folders command **91**
- Manage tab **203**
- management tools **183**
- manually closing applications **29**
- MAPI clients **241**
- maps **242**
- margins **169**
- Match case box **167, 181**
- Match whole words only check box **167, 181**
- measurement units **205**
- media files
  - creating playlists for **143**
  - formats for **140**
  - linking to **142**
  - playing **141**
  - synchronizing **140**
  - transferring **140, 144**
  - troubleshooting **237**
- media libraries **142**
- Media Player **237**
- Media Player Mobile **140–145**
- media players **11**
- Media sync option **140**
- meeting requests **92, 94, 154, 157**
- memory
  - available **265**
  - freeing **190, 238, 244**
  - low conditions for **28, 218**
  - running apps and **28, 195**
  - storing numbers in **198**
  - viewing expansion card **196**
- memory buttons **198**
- memory dial **259**
- Memory icon **196**
- memory options (web) **120**
- Memory screen **218**
- Memory Settings screen **29**
- Memory tab **120**
- memory usage **218**
- memos. *See* messages; notes
- menu items **21**
- Menu key **21, 22**
- menus **20–22**
- Menu icon **206**
- Menu screen **206**
- Message Details command **107**
- message list **107, 109**
- Message Options command **104**
- Message Options screen **104**
- Message Priority list **105**
- message status icons **108**
- Message tab **95**
- Message validity period option **110**
- messages
  - See also* multimedia messages; text messages; voice notes
  - adding signatures to **94, 111**
  - addressing **101, 103**
  - automatically resending **110**
  - creating email **89**
  - deleting **96, 109, 110**
  - dialing from **39**

- displaying notification **204**
  - displaying status of **108**
  - forwarding **94, 107**
  - invalid characters and **102**
  - listening to **41**
  - receiving notifications for
    - 105, 111, 232**
  - saving **90**
  - sorting **109**
  - storing **245**
- Messages tab **110**
- Messaging application
  - See also* text messages;
  - multimedia messages
  - adding contacts and **149**
  - chat sessions and **107**
  - customizing **110–112**
  - email settings in **95**
  - messaging options in **104**
  - notification options in **105**
  - overview **101**
  - play options in **106**
  - starting **101**
  - status icons in **108**
- messaging applications **243**
- messaging services **231, 250**
- microphone **5, 42, 135, 245**
- microphone icon **208**
- Microsoft ActiveSync. *See* ActiveSync
- Microsoft Exchange
  - ActiveSync. *See* Exchange ActiveSync
- Microsoft Office **163, 165**
- Microsoft Office Excel **173**
  - See also* spreadsheets
- Microsoft Windows Mobile software **188**
- Microsoft Windows Mobile website **223**
- Microsoft Word documents.
  - See* documents
- MIDI files **102**
- miniSD cards **193**
- mirror **6, 132**
- Missed call option **55**
- MMS files **142**
- MMS messaging **101, 250**
- mobile accounts. *See* accounts
- Mobile Device component (Windows) **250**
- Mobile Device folder **77, 189**
- Mobile Device icon **250**
- mobile devices **192, 223**
- mobile networks **229, 230**
- mobile phone numbers **149**
- mobile phones. *See* wireless phones
- Mobile to Market certificates **187**
- Mobile-Based Device icon **189**
- Mode tab **122**
- Modem tab **220**
- ModemLink application **125**
- modems **125**
- Modify Sheets command **179, 182**
- Month View **152**
- most recently dialed numbers list **38**
- moving
  - documents to folders **170, 187**
  - files to expansion cards **140, 144, 195, 196**
  - information **170, 181, 196**
  - pictures and videos **137**
  - speed-dial buttons **50**
  - text **167**
  - workbooks **181**
- moving around the screen **17–19**
- moving through web pages **116**

- MP3 files 140
  - MP4 files 140
  - MPEG files 136
  - MPEG4 files 102
  - multi-connector 5
  - multi-line fields 18
  - multimedia features 99, 129
  - multimedia file types 136
  - multimedia files 136, 245
  - multimedia messages
    - creating 102
    - deleting 109, 110
    - displaying 107
    - downloading 105, 110
    - forwarding 107
    - internal memory and 245
    - opening 106
    - overview 99
    - phone numbers in 39
    - playing 106–107
    - previewing 104
    - receiving 105
    - replying to 107
    - requirements for 1
    - saving 107
    - sending 102, 104, 108
    - setting options for 104
    - sorting 109
    - troubleshooting 231
  - Multimedia Messaging System. *See* MMS messaging
  - multiple recipients 101
  - music 39, 140, 141, 202
    - See also* media files
  - music files 237
  - Mute command 42
  - My Device folder 186
  - My Device library 142
  - My Documents folder 185, 186, 226
  - My Pictures folder 131, 132
  - My Playlists category 143
  - My Storage Card library 142
  - My Text command 89
  - My Text phrases 89
  - My Windows Mobile-Based Device icon 190
- N**
- names 30, 252
  - naming
    - document files 168, 170
    - expansion cards 197
    - folders 170
    - groups of pictures 135
    - speed-dial buttons 48
    - templates 167, 174
    - workbooks 181
    - worksheets 178, 179
  - navigating the screen 17–19
  - navigating web pages 116
  - navigator. *See* 5-way navigator
  - navigator buttons 17, 19
  - negative numbers 205
  - network protocols 145
  - network settings 61, 112
  - Network tab 61, 145
  - networks
    - changing 61
    - connecting to 62
    - logging in to 216
    - troubleshooting 229–233
  - New Account command 87
  - New Appointment command 152, 153
  - New MMS command 103
  - New Partnership option 123
  - New Sound command 203
  - New Speed Dial command 48
  - notes
    - adding 149, 158
    - creating 160, 161
    - removing 162
    - saving 161, 162

- Notes application 159–162
- Notes icon 160
- Notes list 161, 162
- Notes tab 149, 214
- notification options 105, 111, 203
- notification screens. *See* notifications
- Notification tab 111
- notifications
  - changing event 203
  - closing 106
  - displaying 55
  - downloading sounds for 54
  - enabling or disabling 204
  - phone calls and 59
  - previewing sounds for 55
  - receiving messages and 105, 111
  - receiving phone calls and 44
  - receiving transmissions and 125
  - receiving voicemail 41
  - setting ringtones for 54
  - setting system sounds for 202
  - silencing sounds for 202
  - troubleshooting 232
- Notifications check box 203
- Notifications tab 54, 203
- Now Playing playlist 143, 144
- Now Playing screen 143
- number format settings 205
- number pad 12
- number sign symbol 205
- Number tab 205
- numbered lists 169
- numbers
  - See also* phone numbers
  - entering 24, 25
  - formatting 173, 177
  - pasting into Calculator 198
- O**
- Off Hold button 42
- Office files 165
- Office Outlook. *See* Outlook
- Office Word documents. *See* documents
- offline synchronization 236
- Off-peak times options 73
- OK button 5, 29
- One Column option 116
- online address book 93, 96, 151
- online forums 247
- online support (Palm) 247
- Open URL command 142
- opening
  - ActiveSync 76
  - alternate characters list 26
  - applications 28, 195, 206
  - attachments 91
  - calculator 198
  - Dial Pad 38
  - documents 166
  - email applications 242
  - File Explorer 186
  - items in folders 186
  - menus 20, 22
  - multimedia messages 106
  - on-device documentation 247
  - Outlook folders 236
  - Phone Settings screen 14
  - Picsel PDF Viewer 165
  - Quick Tour 247
  - templates 174
  - text messages 106
  - Today screen 12, 29
  - web pages 115, 117, 119
  - Wireless Manager 33
- operating system (device) 228, 253, 263

- operating systems (PCs) 75
  - operational warnings 258
  - Option key 18, 24, 25, 251
  - Option Lock icon 25
  - Option Lock mode 25
  - options
    - displaying 155
    - highlighting 18, 19, 23
    - selecting 22, 23
  - Options screen (ActiveSync) 81
  - Options screen (Internet Explorer) 120
  - Options screen (messaging) 95, 110
  - Options tab 201, 209, 214
  - organizer features 34, 147
  - orientation (screen) 206
  - orientation (slides) 172
  - orientation options 206
  - Orientation tab 172
  - outages 231
  - Outbox 108
  - Outlook
    - accessing folders for 236
    - copying addresses to 236
    - downloading messages from 91, 92
    - email client software and 240
    - installing drivers for 224
    - synchronizing with 70, 94
  - Outlook E-mail screen 87, 89
  - overdue tasks 159
  - Override playback options 172
  - owner information 214
  - Owner Information icon 214
  - Owner Information screen 214
- P**
- page breaks 166
  - paired devices 126
  - paired relationships. *See* partnerships
  - pairing. *See* partnerships
  - Palm (online support) 247
  - Palm applications 188
  - Palm devices 223
  - Paragraph command 169
  - paragraph formatting 169
  - partial battery icon 10
  - partnerships 123, 233, 251
  - passkeys 53, 123, 124
  - Password tab 213
  - Password type list 213
  - passwords
    - call-blocking and 57
    - corporate email accounts and 72
    - entering 71, 88, 213
    - forgetting or losing 213
    - locking smartphone and 210, 213
    - saving 88
    - spreadsheets and 173
  - Paste command 138, 168
  - patches 190
  - patterns in workbooks 173
  - Pause playback option 106, 145
  - PCS phones. *See* wireless phones
  - PDF files 165, 174
  - PDF Viewer 165
  - Peak times options 73
  - performance 228, 243
  - Personal Address Book 236
  - personal computers
    - connecting to 77
    - enabling dial-up networking for 126
    - installing from 189
    - reinstalling desktop software on 224



- synchronizing with 81, 82
- system requirements 75
- viewing videos and pictures on 139
- personal events 155
- personal identification numbers (PINs) 60, 212, 251
- personal information 213, 214, 249
- personal information managers 237, 251
  - See also PIM applications
- Personal option 155
- Personal tab 54
- personalizing your smartphone 199
- phone
  - See also phone calls; phone numbers; smartphone
  - adjusting volume 13, 56
  - advanced features 41–48
  - answering 39, 44
  - customizing 54–62
  - dialing 12, 34–37, 38, 49
  - disabling touch-sensitive feature for 211
  - hanging up 13, 42
  - network settings for 61
  - ringtones for 54, 55
  - running applications and 42, 43
  - selecting wireless band for 59
  - silencing ringer 40
  - specifications for 263
  - viewing minutes usage for 47
  - waking up screen for 42
- phone calls
  - See also phone; phone numbers
  - adding a second 44
  - blocking 57
  - ending 13, 42
  - forwarding 46
  - hands-free devices and 50, 54
  - making 12, 34, 38, 42, 107
  - placing on hold 42
  - receiving 39, 42
  - receiving notifications for 59
  - restricting 60
  - sending to voicemail 39
  - setting up conference 45
  - troubleshooting 232, 245
- Phone dialog box 39
- phone headset 50–51
  - See also headsets
- Phone icon 212
- phone lock feature 210
- phone numbers
  - See also phone; phone calls
  - assigning to speed-dial buttons 48
  - copying 37, 39, 119
  - entering 12, 34, 37, 38
  - entering extra digits with 49
  - locating smartphone 13
  - missing from Phone Settings screen 14
  - redialing most recent 38
  - saving 43
  - selecting 20
- Phone Off message 33, 251
- Phone Settings screen 14, 57, 212
- phone status icons 62
- Phone tab 57
- Phone/Send button 5, 13, 35, 251
- Phone/Send icon 34

- phone-off icon **33**
- photo albums **136**
- photos. *See* pictures
- pick lists
  - accessing **22**
  - exiting **23**
  - highlighting in **18, 23**
  - scrolling through **18**
  - selecting items in **20, 23**
- Picseel PDF Viewer **165**
- picture files **102, 139**
- picture formats **136**
- Picture Speed Dial button **48**
- picture speed-dial buttons **35, 48**
- pictures
  - adding as backgrounds **138, 201**
  - adding as screensaver **134**
  - adding sounds to **104**
  - adding to messages **103**
  - adjusting resolution of **132, 139**
  - creating caller ID **149**
  - default resolution settings for **242**
  - deleting **139**
  - downloading **136**
  - editing **138**
  - hiding on web pages **116**
  - naming groups of **135**
  - previewing **132, 243**
  - receiving **131**
  - saving **135**
  - sending **137**
  - setting default size **135**
  - storing **244**
  - synchronizing **139**
  - taking **131–132, 242**
  - viewing **131, 136, 139**
- Pictures & Videos application
  - 133, 136–139**
- PIM applications **249, 251**
- PIMs **224, 237, 251**
- PIN unlock key **251**
- PINs **60, 212, 251**
- Play button **141**
- Play Slide Show command **136**
- Play Sound box **55**
- Play sound check box **203**
- Play Sound list **216**
- playback icons **49**
- playback options **144, 172**
- Playback screen **144, 145**
- Playback tab **144, 172**
- playing
  - media files **141**
  - multimedia messages **106–107**
  - presentations **171, 172**
  - sounds **135**
  - voice notes **161**
  - voicemail messages **41**
- playlists **140, 141, 143**
- plug-ins **115, 201**
- POP accounts **87**
- pop-up menus **22**
- port numbers **222**
- portable radio. *See* radio
- ports. *See* IR port; USB ports
- Power icon **218**
- Power screen **218**
- Power/End button **5, 33**
- PowerPoint files **163**
- PowerPoint Mobile
  - application **171–172**
  - PowerPoint Mobile icon **171**
  - precautions **261**
  - preferences **111, 199, 225**
    - See also* customizing
  - preinstalled applications **190, 265**
  - presentations **171, 172**
    - See also* PowerPoint Mobile

- Preview Message command 104
- Preview Mode (camera) 243
- previewing
  - multimedia messages 104
  - pictures 132, 243
  - sounds 55, 204
  - videos 133
- priority levels 105, 158
- Priority list 90
- privacy mode 105, 112
- private events 155
- Private option 155
- processor 263
- Program Buttons tab 207
- Program Files folder 196
- Programs check box 203
- Programs screen 28
- programs. *See* applications; software
- Prompt if device unused for check box 213
- Properties command 117
- protected spreadsheets 173
- protecting
  - information 210–214
  - Treo smartphone 210
- proxy servers 221
- PSW files 166
- PUK (PIN unlock key) 251
- punctuation marks 25, 27
- Purge command 109
- Purge screen 109
- push email accounts 87, 90
- push technology 70
- Q**
  - QCELP files 102
  - Quality command 133
  - Quick Keys 36, 48
  - Quick Tour 247
  - Quick Tour icon 247
  - QuickTime Player 139
  - quitting applications 28, 218
- R**
  - radio 258, 263
  - radio frequency emissions 255, 259
  - RAS connections 220
  - reassigning buttons 206–207
  - Receive all incoming beams check box 193
  - receiving
    - attachments 91
    - beamed information 193
    - email 90, 91, 239
    - meeting requests 92
    - multimedia messages 105, 110
    - pictures 131
    - text messages 101, 105, 232
    - videos 131
  - Receiving Data message 193
  - recently-viewed web pages 119
  - rechargeable battery. *See* battery
  - recipients, sending to multiple 101
  - Record button action option 162
  - recording
    - sounds 203
    - videos 132–133
    - voice notes 209
  - Recording icon 161
  - recording toolbar 160
  - records (data) 192
  - recurring appointments. *See* repeating appointments
  - redialing phone numbers 38
  - redirector (websites) 242
  - Refresh command 116
  - refreshing web pages 116, 241

- Region tab 205
- regional settings 204, 214
- Regional Settings icon 204
- Regional Settings screen 204
- reinstalling software or applications 224, 226
- Reminder option 153
- reminders
  - adding 153, 158
  - events and 157
  - system alarms and 215
  - tasks and 159
  - turning on and off 203
- remote access servers 220
- remote files 221
- Remove Programs icon 190, 192
- Remove Programs list 190
- Remove Programs screen 190, 192
- Remove Split command 175
- removing
  - applications 190, 245
  - battery 225, 227
  - battery door 8
  - Bluetooth connections 124
  - certificates 217
  - contacts 150
  - directory services 93
  - documents 170
  - email accounts 89
  - events 156
  - expansion cards 194
  - favorites 118
  - files 187, 245
  - items from folders 186
  - items from libraries 143
  - items from playlists 144
  - messages 96, 109, 110
  - notes 162
  - partnerships 124, 233
  - pictures 139
  - speed-dial buttons 50
  - tasks 159
  - text 20
  - web files 120
  - workbooks 182
  - worksheets 182
- Rename command 197
- Rename/Move command 167, 170, 181, 196
- renaming
  - documents 170
  - expansion cards 197
  - items in folders 186
  - workbooks 181
  - worksheets 179
- Repeat check box 204
- Repeat command 142
- repeat patterns 154
- repeating appointments 154
- repeating current song 141
- repeating sounds 204
- repeating tasks 158
- Replace All button 167, 181
- Replace button 167, 181
- Replace text as you type check box 209
- replacing
  - information 181
  - text 167
  - the battery 226–227
- Request Delivery/Read Receipt check box 105
- Require PIN when phone is used check box 212
- reset button 6, 225
- resets 213, 224–226, 230
  - caution for 225
- resizing text 117
- resolution (camera) 242
- resolution (screen) 229, 264
- Resolution command 132, 242
- restarting Treo smartphone.  
See resets

- restoring
    - backups 226, 239
    - information 225, 226
    - preferences and system settings 225
    - sound settings 202
  - Resume playback option 106, 145
  - retrieving voicemail 41
  - Return key 24
  - reverse type 20
  - Revert to Saved command 139
  - revision marks 166
  - RF emissions 255, 259
  - RF Safety Statement 255
  - right action key 20
  - right-click menus. *See* shortcut menus
  - ringer switch 7, 202
  - ringer volume 56
  - ringer, silencing 40
  - ringtone files 102
  - ringtone managers 243
  - ringtones
    - assigning to contacts 49, 56, 137, 150
    - creating video 137
    - downloading 54
    - previewing 55
    - selecting 54
  - roaming 74, 238
  - Roaming option 55
  - rotating pictures 134, 138
  - RTF files 165
  - RTSP files 136, 142
  - running multiple applications 28
  - Running Programs tab 29, 218
- S**
- Safety Statement (FCC) 255
  - Save As command 118, 168
  - Save Image command 119
  - Save links... option 120
  - Save password check box 72, 88
  - Save to Contact Ring Tone command 137
  - Save to Contacts command 44
  - Save to list 195
  - Save to option 162
  - Save to Template command 107
  - Saved folder 90
  - saving
    - documents 165, 166, 168, 170
    - email messages 90
    - files 195
    - multimedia items 107
    - multimedia messages 107
    - notes 161, 162, 209
    - passwords 88
    - phone numbers 43
    - pictures and videos 135
    - text messages 107
    - workbooks 172, 174, 182
  - Schedule command 73
  - Schedule screen 73
  - scheduled syncs 238, 240
  - schedules
    - adding items to 152, 153, 154, 157
    - managing 152–156
    - organizing events for 155
    - removing events 156
    - removing tasks 159
    - sorting tasks on 159
    - unavailable time on 155
    - viewing daily 152
  - scheduling synchronization 73–74
  - screen
    - activating items on 20

- activating wrong features 229
- adjusting brightness 204
- adjusting display 204–206
- aligning 205
- arranging web pages on 116
- battery life and 12
- caring for 6
- changing color themes for 201, 205
- changing orientation 206
- disabling touch-sensitivity for 210
- locking 211
- moving around on 17–19
- scrolling in 18–19, 210
- selecting items on 20
- setting backgrounds for 138, 201
- setting delays for 34
- specifications for 264
- troubleshooting 205, 229
- turning on or off 33, 34, 218, 249
- waking up 34, 42
- screen fonts 204
- Screen icon 204, 205
- screen resolution 229, 264
- Screen taps check box 203
- Screen view 205
- screens, returning to
  - previous 19
- screensavers 134
- scroll arrows 18, 19
- scroll bar 19
- Scroll upon reaching the last line check box 210
- scrolling
  - slides 171
  - smartphone screen 18–19, 210
  - spreadsheets 175
  - web pages 116
- SD expansion cards 193
- SDP files 142
- SDP Streaming files 136
- Search button 186
- Search dialog box 185
- Search for list 185, 186
- Search icon 185
- search results list 185, 186
- searching
  - contacts list 36
  - documents 167
  - spreadsheets 181
  - web pages 115
- searching for files 185, 186
- searching for information 167, 181, 185–186
- searching for signal 12
- secure websites 242
- security 53, 123, 210–214, 217
- security certificates 115, 216
- security options (web) 121
- security software 210
- Security tab 120, 212
- Select All Text command 119
- selecting
  - applications 28
  - items in folders 187
  - items in lists 23
  - items on screen 19, 20
  - menu items 21, 22
  - options in lists 20, 22, 23
  - speed-dial entries 30
  - tabs 18
  - web links 19, 116
- self-portrait mirror 6, 132
- Send Link via E-mail command 117
- Send meeting requests via option 157
- Send outgoing items...
  - check box 74
- Send Sound command 203

- Send via E-Mail command 191
- Send/Receive command 91
- sending
  - copyrighted items 137
  - email 90, 91, 97, 117, 239
  - meeting requests 94, 154, 157
  - multimedia messages 102, 104, 108
  - pictures 137
  - sounds 203
  - text messages 40, 101
  - videos 137
- sensitivity options 155, 158
- Sent folder 95, 108
- servers, troubleshooting 238, 241
  - See also* Exchange Servers
- service contracts 1
- service providers 220, 231, 240
- Services tab 47, 58, 59, 61
- Set as Hands-Free command 232
- Set as Today Background command 138
- Set reminders for new items option 157, 159
- Set up my proxy server option 221
- setting alarm clock 216
- settings. *See* options
- shaded lightning bolt 10
- sharing information 191
- sheet list 175
- Shift cells options 182
- Shift key 24, 25
- Short Messaging Service.
  - See* SMS messaging
- shortcut menus 22
- shortcuts 20
- Show alphabetical index option 151
- Show contact names only option 151
- Show half hour slots option 156
- Show icons option 157
- Show list 136, 195
- Show Options command 172
- Show Pictures option 116
- Show start and due dates option 159
- Show Tasks entry bar option 159
- Show time stamps of each message option 111
- Show week numbers option 156
- Shuffle command 141
- side button 5
- signal, searching for 12
- signal strength 62, 229, 246
- signal-strength icon 33, 220
- Signature box 111
- signatures 94, 111
- Signatures screen 94, 111
- silencing system sounds 7, 202
- silencing the ringer 40
- silent alarm 202, 204
- SIM smartcards 8, 9, 212, 252
- Size option 168
- sketching 160
- Skins tab 145
- Slide Show tab 134
- slide show toolbar 137
- slide shows 134, 136, 171, 172
- slide timing option 172
- slider 19

- slides 104, 107
- smartcard. *See* SIM smartcards
- smartphone
  - caution for electrostatic discharge and 261
  - caution for resetting 225
  - caution for storing 6, 7
  - charging 9, 11
  - compatibility with third-party vendors 75
  - compatible hands-free devices for 51
  - compliance statement for 257
  - components of 1, 5–7
  - connecting to PCs 77
  - disabling touch-sensitivity for 211
  - disposing of 259
  - features described 1
  - freeing space on 190, 244
  - getting help with 223, 247
  - getting phone number for 13
  - locking 213
  - losing 79, 214
  - low lighting conditions and 24
  - management tools for 183
  - moving around on 15
  - not responding 224, 230, 244
  - personalizing 199
  - required items for 2
  - resetting 213, 224–226, 230
  - setting up 8–14
  - specifications for 263
  - system requirements for 265
  - third-party applications and 243
  - troubleshooting 247
  - turning on and off 33, 257
  - unlocking 213
  - updating information on 65
  - usage guidelines for 255, 259
- SMS messaging 101, 252
- SMTP servers 240
- soft resets 224
- software
  - See also* applications
  - caution for hard resets and 225
  - compatibility with Windows Mobile 228
  - included with smartphone 2, 265
  - installing 75, 187
  - purchasing 228
  - reinstalling 224, 226
- songs. *See* music
- Sort By command 159
- Sort by list 179, 186
- Sort command 109, 179
- sort options 159
- sort order 179
- sorting
  - folder items 170, 181, 186
  - History list items 119
  - information 179
  - messages 109
  - pictures and videos 138
  - tasks 159
- sound clips 102
- Sound Mode buttons 202
- sound settings 202
- sounds
  - adding to pictures 104
  - changing alarm 216
  - customizing 202
  - playing 135
  - previewing 55, 204



- recording 203
- selecting event 203
- sending 203
- setting ringtone 54
- setting system 202
- silencing 7, 202
- turning off event 203
- Sounds & Notifications screen 54
- Sounds & Notifications Settings icon 202
- Sounds & Notifications Settings screen 202, 203
- Sounds tab 202
- Space key 24
- speaker 6, 140
- speakerphone 42, 245, 258
- Speakerphone command 42
- special characters 27
- special characters. *See* alternate characters; symbols
- special occasions 153
- specifications 263
- speech-impaired services 56
- Speed Dial Options command 50
- speed-dial buttons 35, 48–50
- speed-dial entries 30
- Spell Check command 90
- spell-checking 90, 169
- Spelling command 169
- split bar 175
- spreadsheet templates 172, 174, 182
- spreadsheets
  - See also* Excel Mobile; workbooks; worksheets
  - accessing 163
  - adding charts to 180
  - calculations in 176
  - changing order of worksheets 178
  - creating 172
  - defining filters for 180
  - deleting elements in 182
  - display options for 175
  - entering data in 174, 177
  - formatting 172, 178
  - insertion options for 177
  - scrolling 175
  - searching 181
  - sending 83
  - sorting in 179
  - unsupported features for 174
- SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) 115
- standby mode 132
- Start button 5, 28
- Start menu 28, 206, 252
- starting
  - data connections 221
    - Excel Mobile 174
    - Internet Explorer Mobile 115
    - Media Player Mobile 141, 144
    - PowerPoint Mobile 171
    - Word Mobile 166
  - static electricity 261
  - status icons 62, 108
  - stereo headphones 140
  - Still image compression level list 135
  - Still Mode command 133
  - Stop command 142
  - stopping playback 142
  - stopping synchronization 82
  - Storage Card folder 190, 197
  - storage card symbol 186
  - Storage Card tab 196, 218
  - storage cards. *See* expansion cards
  - storage space 218, 238

- Storage tab 96
  - storage temperatures 265
  - storing
    - applications 245
    - attachments 92, 96
    - document files 168
    - information 193, 244, 245
    - passwords 72
    - pictures 244
    - smartphone 6, 7
    - workbooks 181
  - streaming 119, 252
  - Streaming Media application 142
  - Strikethrough option 169
  - stylus 7
  - submenus 22
  - Suggest words when
    - entering text check box 209
  - support 247
  - Swap button 45, 46
  - Symbol command 176
  - symbols 26, 27, 49, 176
  - Sync button 74
  - sync cable 75, 77, 78
  - sync conflicts 72
  - sync schedules 238, 240
  - synchronization
    - backing up information
      - and 226
    - battery life and 11
    - benefits of 65
    - defaults for 67
    - defined 252
    - hard resets and 225, 226
    - overview 67
    - preparing for 75
    - scheduling 73–74
    - setting options for 81
    - setting up 71, 79, 80
    - stopping 82
    - troubleshooting 224, 233–239, 241
  - synchronization software 69, 75, 236
  - synchronizing
    - addresses 236
    - dates and time 215
    - email 11, 91, 233, 240, 241
    - information 68, 69, 233
    - manually 74
    - media files 140
    - multimedia files 139
    - Office files 165
    - offline 236
    - over Bluetooth
      - connections 79
    - over IR ports 80
    - playlists 141
    - through USB hubs 235
    - wirelessly 68, 70, 79, 80, 233
    - with multiple computers 81
    - with sync cable 78
    - with third-party
      - applications 75, 226
  - system alarms 215
  - system dates and time 214
  - system errors 230
  - system locks 210, 213
  - system requirements 75, 265
  - system settings 214–220, 225
  - system sounds 7, 202
  - system warnings 202
- ## T
- tables in documents 166
  - tabs 18
  - taking pictures 131–132, 242
  - tapping 17, 20, 205
  - tapping sounds 203

- task categories 158, 159
- Task tab 158
- tasks
  - adding notes to 158
  - completing 158
  - creating 157
  - customizing 159
  - deleting 159
  - displaying 159
  - filtering 159
  - filtering and sorting 159
  - marking as sensitive 158
  - setting due dates for 158
  - setting reminders for 158, 159
- Tasks application 157–159
- Tasks entry bar 157, 159
- Tasks icon 157
- Tasks list 159
- Tasks tab (Connections) 220, 221
- TDD devices 56, 258
- technical support 247
- telecommunications devices
  - for impaired. *See* TTY devices
- temperature range 265
- templates
  - documents 167, 170
  - multimedia messages 107
  - notes 161, 162
  - spreadsheets 172, 174, 182
  - text messages 107
- Templates folder 167, 174
- tentative appointments 153
- text
  - aligning 169
  - changing 167
  - copying 119
  - deleting 20
  - entering 24, 25, 209, 210
  - finding and replacing 167, 209
  - formatting 168
  - highlighting 20, 169
  - moving or copying 167
  - resizing 117, 204
  - selecting 20
  - spell-checking 90, 169
  - word-processing features for 166
- text captions 104
- text fields
  - moving to 18
  - opening drop-down lists in 23
  - removing text in 20
- scrolling through 18
- text files 217
- text messages
  - creating 101
  - deleting 109, 110
  - forwarding 107
  - links in 108
  - opening 106
  - overview 99
  - phone calls and 42
  - phone numbers in 39
  - receiving 105, 232
  - replying to 107
  - saving 107
  - sending 40, 101
  - setting options for 104
  - sorting 109
  - troubleshooting 231
- Text Size tab 204
- Text Speed Dial button 48
- text speed-dial buttons 35, 48
- text telephone devices. *See* TTY devices
- themes 201, 205
- third-party applications
  - accessing Outlook folders and 236

- caution for hard resets and 225
  - compatibility with 187
  - deleting 245
  - getting help with 244
  - installing 188, 243, 244
  - navigator and 17, 244
  - previewing pictures and 243
  - reinstalling 224, 226
  - screen resolution and 229
  - synchronizing with 75, 226
  - troubleshooting 188, 228, 243–244
  - third-party vendors 75
  - Thumbnail View 132, 133
  - Thumbnails button 133
  - TIF files 136
  - time format settings 205
  - time system settings 214
  - Time tab 205, 215
  - time units 153
  - time zones 214, 238
  - Timer 132
  - tips 1
  - title bar (Today screen) 30
  - Today icon 201
  - Today screen
    - accessing 12, 29
    - accessing Dial Pad from 38
    - color themes for 205
    - components of 30
    - customizing 138, 201
    - dialing from 34, 35, 37, 38
    - overview 29
    - recovering settings for 239
    - retrieving voicemail from 41
    - Today Settings screen 201
    - top view (smartphone) 7
    - touchscreen. *See* screen
    - touchscreen lockout 210, 211
    - touch-sensitive feature 210
    - transactions 242
    - transferring
      - applications 196
      - files 140, 144, 195, 196
      - information 65, 223
    - transition effects (slides) 172
    - transmission delays 231
    - Transparency level list 138
    - Treo 770 smartphone. *See* smartphone
    - troubleshooting 223, 247
    - Trusted Device list 122
    - trusted devices 121, 122, 125
      - See also* partnerships
    - trusted pairs. *See* partnerships
    - TTY devices 56, 258
    - TTY/TDD options 57, 258
    - Turn on Bluetooth check box 52, 122
    - turning on or off
      - alarms 203, 216
      - caller IDs 58
      - Caps Lock 25
      - event sounds 203
      - keyboard backlight 24
      - Keyguard 211
      - Option Lock 25
      - reminders 203
      - ringer switch 202
      - screen 33, 34, 218
      - smartphone 33, 257
    - TXT files 165
    - Typing mode 162
- U**
- UMTS services 252
  - unauthorized users 210, 217
  - unavailable time slots 155

- Underline option 168
  - underlining text 166, 168
  - Undo command 139
  - Unfreeze Panes option 175
  - Unknown Caller option 55
  - unlocking
    - SIM smartcards 212
    - smartphone 213
    - spreadsheet rows and columns 175
  - unread messages 109
  - unretrieved voicemail 41
  - unsafe areas 257
  - untimed events 153, 154
  - Update Library command 143
  - updating information 65
  - upgrades 223
  - uppercase letters 25, 210
  - urgent message icon 109
  - URLs 142, 171
    - See also* web links
  - USB connections 125
  - USB controllers 236
  - USB hubs 235
  - USB ports 77, 235
  - USB sync cable 77
  - Use above settings while roaming check box 74
  - Use network time zone check box 215
  - user discussion groups 247
  - User Guide* 247
  - usernames 252
- ## V
- Validity Period list 105
  - vCal attachments 240
  - vCard attachments 104, 240
  - Vibrate when... check boxes 55, 204
  - vibrating alarm 202, 204
  - video albums 136
  - video file types 136
  - video files 102, 139, 237
  - Video Mode command 133
  - video options 145
  - video ringtones 131, 137
  - Video tab 135, 145
  - videos
    - adding sounds 135
    - adding to messages 103
    - changing resolution 133
    - defaults for 135
    - downloading 139, 140
    - limiting length 135
    - previewing 133
    - receiving 131
    - recording 132–133
    - saving 135
    - sending 137
    - setting resolution for 242
    - synchronizing 139
    - viewing 131, 136, 139
  - View By command 150
  - View command 116, 151
  - View Recording Toolbar command 160
  - viewing
    - alternate characters 26
    - animated images 139
    - applications on smartphone 28
    - appointments 152
    - calendar 151
    - contacts 37, 150
    - current connection 220
    - daily schedules 152
    - events 153, 155
    - folder contents 186
    - items in folders 170, 181
    - memory usage 218
    - multimedia messages 107
    - notifications 55, 204
    - on-device documentation 247
    - PDF files 165

- pictures 131, 136, 139
  - power settings 218
  - Quick Tour documentation 247
  - running applications 218
  - space on expansion cards 196, 218
  - tasks 159
  - videos 131, 136, 139
  - web pages 115, 116
  - wireless settings 219
  - virtual private networks. *See* VPN connections
  - voice captions 103
  - Voice Command button 208, 209
  - Voice Command icon 228
  - Voice Command screen 208
  - Voice Command settings 208, 228
  - voice commands 11, 209
  - Voice mail option 55
  - voice notes 160, 209
  - Voice recording format list 209
  - voice recording formats 209
  - voicemail
    - customizing 49, 55
    - receiving notifications for 41
    - retrieving messages 41
    - sending calls to 39, 44
    - setting up 40
    - viewing minutes usage for 47
  - voicemail buttons 49
  - Voicemail icon 40, 41
  - voicemail systems 40
  - volume
    - phone 13, 56
    - ringer 56
    - tapping sounds 203
  - Volume button 5, 13, 56
  - VPN clients 221, 233
  - VPN connections 87, 92, 221
  - VPN software 221
- W**
- waking up screen 34, 42
  - wallpaper 131
  - warnings 202, 258
  - warranty 2
  - WBMP files 102
  - weak signals 229, 246
  - web addresses 30, 116, 242
    - See also* web links
  - web browser. *See* Internet Explorer Mobile
  - web browsing
    - memory consumption and 245
    - requirements for 1
    - secure sites and 115, 116, 242
    - troubleshooting 241
  - web files 120
  - web links
    - clearing 120
    - internal memory and 245
    - messages and 108, 117
    - Palm online support 247
    - selecting 19, 116
    - troubleshooting 242
  - web pages
    - accessing 115, 117, 119, 241
    - arranging on screen 116
    - clearing links to 245
    - copying from 119
    - dialing from 39, 119
    - display options for 116
    - downloading items from 118, 189
    - hiding images on 116
    - moving through 116

- playing media files from 142
- refreshing 116, 241
- resizing text on 117
- returning to recently viewed 119
- scrolling 116
- searching 115
- security settings for 121
- selecting addresses on 242
- sending email from 117
- setting as home 120
- viewing 115, 116
- Web search field 115
- web-based mail systems 85
- websites
  - See also* web browsing
  - accessing 113
  - compatibility with 115
  - connecting to 115, 125
  - ending connections to 222
  - redirectors and 242
  - searching over 115
  - submitting transactions and 242
- week numbers 156
- Week View 152, 156
- Week view option 156
- Windows Media Player 119
- Windows Mobile devices 192, 223
- Windows Mobile Getting Started Disc 2, 187
- Windows Mobile operating system 228, 253
- Windows Mobile software 188
- wireless band setting 59
- wireless connections 113, 121, 125–127
- wireless coverage 2, 12, 33
- wireless features 113, 219, 243
- Wireless Manager 33, 219
- Wireless Manager command 33
- wireless modems 125
- wireless phones 260, 261
- wireless services 219
- wireless synchronization 68, 70, 79, 80, 233
- WMA files 136, 140
- WMV files 136, 140
- Word application 163
  - See also* documents
- Word Completion tab 209
- word matching 167, 181
- Word Mobile application 18, 165–171
- Word Mobile icon 166
- word-processing features 166
- workbook list 182
- workbooks
  - See also* Excel Mobile application;
  - spreadsheets
  - creating 174
  - deleting 182
  - displaying 175
  - moving around in 175
  - naming 181
  - organizing 181
  - replacing information in 181
  - saving 172, 174, 182
  - searching 181
  - setting default template for 182
- worksheet names 173
- worksheets
  - See also* spreadsheets;
  - workbooks
  - adding 178
  - adjusting column and row size for 179

- deleting 182
- entering defined names in 178
- entering formulas in 176, 182
- entering functions in 176
- filtering data in 179
- formatting options for 178
- inserting cells, rows, and columns 177

- moving between 175
- naming 178
- removing cells, rows, and columns 182
- renaming 179
- Writing mode 162

## Y

- Year View 152

## Z

- ZIP files 187
- zoom buttons (camera) 132
- Zoom command 117, 167
- zoom icons (presentations) 171
- Zoom In command 171
- zoom options 132
- zoom settings 173, 175, 210